

# nameauth — Name authority mechanism for consistency in text and index\*

Charles P. Schaum<sup>†</sup>

Released 2020/02/20

## Abstract

The `nameauth` package automates the correct formatting and indexing of names for professional writing. This aids the use of a **name authority** and the editing process without needing to retype name references.

## Contents

<b>1 Quick Start</b>	<b>2</b>	2.6.2 Cross-References . . .	40
1.1 How to Use the Manual . . .	2	2.6.3 Index Sorting . . . . .	44
1.2 Task Dashboard . . . . .	3	2.6.4 Index Tags . . . . .	45
1.3 Basic Concepts . . . . .	4	2.7 “Text Tags” . . . . .	48
1.3.1 Traditional Interface . .	5	2.8 Name Decisions . . . . .	49
1.3.2 Simplified Interface . .	7	2.8.1 Making Decisions . . .	50
1.3.3 Macro Overview . . .	10	2.8.2 Testing Decisions . . .	51
1.4 Obsolete Syntax . . . . .	11	2.9 Alternate Name Macros . . .	54
1.5 Name Pattern Overview . . .	11	2.10 Longer Examples . . . . .	57
1.6 Debug and Avoid Errors . . .	13	2.10.1 Hooks: Intro . . . . .	57
<b>2 Detailed Usage</b>	<b>17</b>	2.10.2 Hooks: Life Dates . . .	58
2.1 Package Options . . . . .	17	2.10.3 Hooks: Advanced . . .	60
2.2 Naming Macros . . . . .	21	2.10.4 Customization . . . . .	67
2.2.1 \Name and \Name* . .	21	2.11 Technical Notes . . . . .	69
2.2.2 Forenames: \FName . .	22	2.11.1 General . . . . .	69
2.2.3 Variant Names . . . . .	23	2.11.2 Active Unicode . . . .	70
2.3 Language Topics . . . . .	25	2.11.3 L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X Engines . . . .	72
2.3.1 Affixes . . . . .	25	<b>3 Implementation</b>	<b>74</b>
2.3.2 Listing by Surname . .	26	3.1 Flags and Registers . . . . .	74
2.3.3 Eastern Names . . . . .	26	3.2 Hooks . . . . .	76
2.3.4 Particles / Ancient . .	27	3.3 Package Options . . . . .	77
2.4 Basic Formatting . . . . .	32	3.4 Internal Macros . . . . .	78
2.5 Alternate Formatting . . . .	35	3.5 Prefix Macros . . . . .	91
2.5.1 Basic Features . . . . .	35	3.6 General User Interface . . . .	94
2.5.2 Advanced Features . .	37	<b>4 Change History</b>	<b>115</b>
2.6 Indexing Macros . . . . .	39	<b>5 Index</b>	<b>117</b>
2.6.1 Entries & Control . . .	39		

---

\*This file describes version 3.3, last revised 2020/02/20.

<sup>†</sup>E-mail: charles dot schaum@comcast.net

# 1 Quick Start

## 1.1 How to Use the Manual

A **name authority** is a canonical, scholarly list of names to which all variants must refer. The task dashboard (Section 1.2) guides one to various areas of interest. Start with the basics and add features as needed. To load the defaults, simply type:

`\usepackage{nameauth}`

## Package Design and Features

With `nameauth` names become abstractions: verbs that alter state and nouns that have state. That improves accuracy and consistency:

- **Automate** name forms used in professional writing. First uses of names will have full forms. Later uses have shorter forms. Names vary in the text, but stay constant in the index.
- Permit **complex name formatting**.
- Many **cross-cultural, multilingual naming conventions** are possible. More details appear in Sections 1.6, 2.5, 2.6.3, and 2.10.3.
- **Automatic sort keys and tags** aid indexing.
- One can **associate information with names**.
- The standard used for implementing the `nameauth` indexing macros is Nancy C. Mulvany, *Indexing Books* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994). All references [Mulvany] refer to this edition.
- In Section 1.6 we see how to avoid common errors.
- Section 2.11 contains **thanks** and various technical notes.

## Special Signs

As teaching aids, this manual uses markings that are not part of `nameauth`, but in some cases are implemented using it:

We show first uses and subsequent uses of names (Sections 2.4, 2.8.1).

† A dagger indicates “non-native” Eastern forms (Section 2.3.3).

‡ A double dagger shows usage of the obsolete syntax (Section 1.4).

§ A section mark denotes index entries of fictional names.

**3.0** ← Major changes have package version numbers in the margin.



← The “dangerous bend” shows where caution is needed.

### Disclaimer

Names are about real people. This manual mentions notable figures both living and deceased. All names herein are meant to be used respectfully, for teaching purposes only. At no time is any disrespect or bias intended.

## 1.2 Task Dashboard

Here we link to sections by task in order to get things done quickly. Many sections have return links at their end that bring the reader back to this page.

Where do you want to go today?

<b>Quick Start</b> Sections <a href="#">1.3</a> , <a href="#">1.3.1</a> , <a href="#">1.3.2</a> , <a href="#">1.3.3</a> , <a href="#">1.4</a> , <a href="#">1.5</a> , <a href="#">1.6</a>	<b>Basics</b> Package options: Section <a href="#">2.1</a>	<b>Basics</b> Name macros: Sections <a href="#">2.2.1</a> , <a href="#">2.2.2</a>
<b>Intermediate</b> Variant forms: Sections <a href="#">2.2.3</a> , <a href="#">2.3.4</a> , <a href="#">2.6.2</a>	<b>Intermediate</b> Avoid errors: Sec- tions <a href="#">1.4</a> , <a href="#">1.5</a> , <a href="#">1.6</a> , <a href="#">2.3.4</a> , <a href="#">2.11.2</a>	<b>Language</b> Western names: Sections <a href="#">2.3.1</a> , <a href="#">2.3.2</a>
<b>Language</b> Eastern names: Sections <a href="#">2.3.1</a> , <a href="#">2.3.3</a>	<b>Language</b> Particles, medieval, ancient names: Sec- tions <a href="#">2.3.4</a> , <a href="#">2.5</a> , <a href="#">2.10.3</a>	<b>Index</b> Index entries and control: Section <a href="#">2.6.1</a>
<b>Index</b> Index cross-refs, automatic sorting, and auto-info: Sec- tions <a href="#">2.6.2</a> , <a href="#">2.6.3</a> , <a href="#">2.6.4</a> , <a href="#">2.9</a>	<b>Advanced</b> Generally manage how names are typeset: Sections <a href="#">2.4</a> , <a href="#">2.5</a> , <a href="#">2.8.1</a> , <a href="#">2.8.2</a> , <a href="#">2.10.1</a> – <a href="#">2.10.4</a>	
<b>Advanced</b> Generally manage names by using a name authority: Sec- tions <a href="#">2.2.3</a> , <a href="#">2.4</a> , <a href="#">2.6.1</a> , <a href="#">2.8.1</a>	<b>Advanced</b> Make complex elements determined automatically by names: Sections <a href="#">2.7</a> , <a href="#">2.8.2</a>	
<b>Application</b> Use nameauth with beamer overlays to get correct name forms: Sections <a href="#">2.4</a> , <a href="#">2.8</a> , <a href="#">2.8.1</a> , <a href="#">2.8.2</a>	<b>Application</b> History / game books, other complex layouts: Sections <a href="#">2.4</a> , <a href="#">2.6.4</a> , <a href="#">2.7</a> , <a href="#">2.8.1</a> , <a href="#">2.8.2</a> , <a href="#">2.10.1</a> – <a href="#">2.10.3</a>	

### 1.3 Basic Concepts

We encode names in macro arguments to address multiple naming systems. Required name elements are shown in **black**; optional parts are in **red**.<sup>1</sup> The arguments appear in the order  $\langle FNN \rangle$   $\langle SNN \rangle$   $\langle Affix \rangle$   $\langle Alternate \rangle$ :

Western Name		
<b>Forename(s):</b> $\langle FNN \rangle$	<b>Surname(s):</b> $\langle SNN \rangle$	<b>Descriptor:</b> $\langle Affix \rangle$
Personal name(s): <i>baptismal name</i> <i>Christian name</i> <i>multiple names</i> <i>praenomen</i> <sup>2</sup>	Family name: <i>of father, mother</i> <i>ancestor, vocation</i> <i>origin, region</i> <i>nomen, cognomen</i> <i>patronym</i>	Sobriquet / title: <i>Sr., Jr., III. . .</i> <i>notable attribute</i> <i>origin, region</i>
<b>Alternate Name(s): <math>\langle Alternate \rangle</math></b>		
In the body text, not the index, $\langle Alternate \rangle$ swaps with $\langle FNN \rangle$ for Western names and $\langle Affix \rangle$ for all other name categories.		

Eastern Name		
<b>Family name:</b> $\langle SNN \rangle$	<b>Personal name:</b> $\langle Affix \rangle$	<b>Descriptor:</b> $\langle Alternate \rangle$
Family / clan name	Seldom multiple names; multi-character okay.	Title, etc. (old syntax for personal names)

Ancient name		
<b>Personal name:</b> $\langle SNN \rangle$	<b>Descriptor:</b> $\langle Affix \rangle$	<b>Descriptor:</b> $\langle Alternate \rangle$
Given name(s)	Sobriquet / title: <i>Sr., Jr., III. . .</i> <i>notable attribute</i> <i>origin, region</i> <i>patronym</i>	Alternate name (old syntax for titles, etc.)

<sup>1</sup> Compare [Mulvany, 152–82] and the *Chicago Manual of Style*.

<sup>2</sup> How one handles Roman names depends on index entry form; some possible suggestions are given above. Explained on page 29 and following, we have a name **Publius Cornelius Scipio** that can be Scipio Africanus or just Scipio, using macro expansion.

### 1.3.1 Traditional Interface

Mandatory arguments are shown in **black**, with optional elements in **red**. If the required argument  $\langle SNN \rangle$  expands to the empty string, `nameauth` will generate a package error. Extra spaces around each argument are stripped (Section 1.6). The argument patterns shown here are used in many `nameauth` macros.

Western Names			
	Required forename(s)	Required surname(s), optional $\langle Affix \rangle$	Optional, in text only
<code>\Name</code> <code>\Name*</code> <code>\FName</code>	<code>[<math>\langle FNN \rangle</math>]</code>	<code>{<math>\langle SNN, Affix \rangle</math>}</code>	<code>[<math>\langle Alternate \rangle</math>]</code>
Add braces <code>{ }</code> after <code>{<math>\langle SNN, Affix \rangle</math>}</code> if other text in brackets <code>[ ]</code> follows.			

#### Examples

Western names require the  $\langle FNN \rangle$  argument to be present. One always includes all arguments for consistent index entries. The simplified interface (Section 1.3.2) cuts down the amount of typing in many cases.

```

\Name [George]{Washington} ..... George Washington
\Name*[George]{Washington} ..... George Washington
\Name [George]{Washington} ..... Washington
\FName[George]{Washington} ..... George
\Name [George S.]{Patton, Jr.} ..... George S. Patton Jr.
\Name*[George S.]{Patton, Jr.} ..... George S. Patton Jr.
\Name [George S.]{Patton, Jr.} ..... Patton
\FName[George S.]{Patton, Jr.} ..... George S.

```

The  $\langle Alternate \rangle$  argument will swap with  $\langle FNN \rangle$  in the text, not in the index or the name pattern (Section 1.5). To see alternate names, one must use a macro that shows forenames (first use, `\Name*`, and `\FName`). Western names require a comma to delimit affixes (Section 2.3.1). Below we see alternate names:

```

\DropAffix\Name*[George S.]{Patton, Jr.}[George] ..... George Patton
\Name [John David]{Rockefeller, IV} ..... John David Rockefeller IV
\Name*[John David]{Rockefeller, IV}[Jay] ..... Jay Rockefeller IV
\DropAffix\Name*[John David]{Rockefeller, IV}[Jay] .... Jay Rockefeller
\Name [John David]{Rockefeller, IV}[Jay] ..... Rockefeller
\Name [Clive Staples]{Lewis} ..... Clive Staples Lewis
\Name*[Clive Staples]{Lewis}[C.S.] ..... C.S. Lewis
\FName[Clive Staples]{Lewis}[Jack] ..... Jack

```

In addition to alternate forenames, one also can display alternate surnames, but that uses several different approaches (Sections 2.2.3, 2.3.4, 2.5.2, 2.10.3).

### “Non-native” Eastern Names, Western Index Entry

	Required forename(s)	Required surname(s), no <i>⟨Affix⟩</i>	Optional, in text only
<code>\Name</code> <code>\Name*</code> <code>\FName</code>	<code>[⟨<i>FNN</i>⟩]</code>	<code>{⟨<i>SNN</i>⟩}</code>	<code>[⟨<i>Alternate</i>⟩]</code>

Add braces { } after {⟨*SNN*⟩} if other text in brackets [ ] follows.

### Examples

Below we start with “regular” Western name forms:

```
\Name[Hideyo]{Noguchi} ..... Hideyo Noguchi
\Name*[Hideyo]{Noguchi}[Doctor] ..... Doctor Noguchi
\Name[Frenc]{Molnár} ..... Frenc Molnár
```

To turn them into “non-native” Eastern names or proper Hungarian names [Mulvany, 166] we use the reversing macros and leave the *⟨Alternate⟩* argument empty (Section 2.3.3). Index entries are in Western style: *⟨SNN⟩*, *⟨FNN⟩*:

```
\CapName\RevName\Name*[Hideyo]{Noguchi} ..... NOGUCHI Hideyo†
\CapName\RevName\Name*[Hideyo]{Noguchi}[Sensei] .... NOGUCHI Sensei†
\RevName\Name*[Frenc]{Molnár} ..... Molnár Frenc†
```

Reversed Western forms do not work with the older syntax (Section 1.4) and **they do not share name control sequences and index entries** with “native” Eastern names and ancient name forms (Section 1.5).

### “Native” Eastern Names in the Text, Eastern Index Entry

	Required surname and forename	Optional, in text only
<code>\Name</code> <code>\Name*</code> <code>\FName</code>	<code>{⟨<i>SNN, Affix</i>⟩}</code>	<code>[⟨<i>Alternate</i>⟩]</code>

Add braces { } after {⟨*SNN, Affix*⟩} if other text in brackets [ ] follows.

### Examples

The comma-delimited required argument, *⟨SNN, Affix⟩*, is the key to non-Western names, which always take the form *⟨SNN Affix⟩* in the index. See Section 2.3.3. “Native” Eastern names have Eastern name order from the start and **they do not share name control sequences and index entries** with Western names (Section 1.5). They can be reversed to have Western name order in the body text.

**3.0** Except for mononyms, non-Western forms also can have alternate names. This is incompatible with the older syntax (see Section 1.4). Unless the index must have Western-style entries, “native” forms are best for Eastern names:

```
\Name{Yamamoto, Isoroku}..... Yamamoto Isoroku
\Name{Yamamoto, Isoroku}..... Yamamoto
\RevName\Name*{Yamamoto, Isoroku}[Admiral] ..... Admiral Yamamoto
\Name{Miyazaki, Hayao} ..... Miyazaki Hayao
\Name*{Miyazaki, Hayao}[Sensei] ..... Miyazaki Sensei
\RevName\Name*{Miyazaki, Hayao}[Mr.] ..... Mr. Miyazaki
```

**Ancient and Medieval Names**

	Required name optional $\langle \textit{Affix} \rangle$	Optional, in text only
$\backslash\text{Name}$ $\backslash\text{Name}^*$ $\backslash\text{FName}$	$\{ \langle \textit{SNN}, \textit{Affix} \rangle \}$	$[ \langle \textit{Alternate} \rangle ]$

Add braces  $\{ \}$  after  $\{ \langle \textit{SNN}, \textit{Affix} \rangle \}$  if other text in brackets  $[ ]$  follows.

### Examples

These forms are meant for royalty and ancient figures. They can be mononyms or have multiple names, and may have an affix. Note the teaser for Section 2.2.2:

```
\Name{Aristotle}..... Aristotle
\Name{Aristotle}..... Aristotle
\Name{Elizabeth, I} ..... Elizabeth I
\Name{Elizabeth, I} ..... Elizabeth
\ForceFN\FName{Elizabeth, I}[Good Queen Bess] ..... Good Queen Bess
```

#### 1.3.2 Simplified Interface

`nameauth` Although not required, using the `nameauth` environment in the preamble guards against undefined macros. This environment defines a tabular-like macro:

```
\begin{nameauth}
  \< \langle arg1 \rangle & \langle arg2 \rangle & \langle arg3 \rangle & \langle arg4 \rangle >
\end{nameauth}
```

It uses  $\langle arg1 \rangle$  as a basis to create three macros that are equivalent to:

```
\langle arg1 \rangle → \Name[ \langle arg2 \rangle ]{ \langle arg3 \rangle }[ \langle arg4 \rangle ]
\L\langle arg1 \rangle → \Name*[ \langle arg2 \rangle ]{ \langle arg3 \rangle }[ \langle arg4 \rangle ] % L for long
\S\langle arg1 \rangle → \FName[ \langle arg2 \rangle ]{ \langle arg3 \rangle }[ \langle arg4 \rangle ] % S for short
```

If either  $\langle arg1 \rangle$  or  $\langle arg3 \rangle$  are empty, or  $\langle SNN \rangle$  is empty, `nameauth` will generate a package error. Forgetting the backslash, ampersands, or angle brackets will cause errors. For more on  $\langle arg4 \rangle$  see page 9.

Comments below are not part of the environment. Extra spaces in each argument are stripped (Section 1.6). Put trailing braces { } or something else after the shorthand macros if text in brackets [ ] follows, so it does not become an optional argument. Below we introduce name forms with particles.

## Examples

```
\begin{nameauth}
%   <arg1>   <arg2>           <arg3>           <arg4>
\< Wash    & George      & Washington    & >% Western
\< Harnack & Adolf      & Harnack      & >% Western
\< Lewis   & Clive Staples & Lewis        & >% Western
\< Pat     & George S.      & Patton, Jr.   & >% W. affix
\< JRIV    & John David     & Rockefeller, IV & >% W. affix
\< Ches    & Chesley B.     & Sullenberger, III & >% W. affix
\< Soto    & Hernando      & de Soto       & >% W. part.
\< JWG     & J.W. von      & Goethe        & >% W. part.
\< VBuren  & Martin        & Van Buren     & >% W. part.
\< Noguchi & Hideyo        & Noguchi       & >% W. as E.
\< Miyaz   &              & Miyazaki, Hayao & >% Eastern
\< Yamt    &              & Yamamoto, Isoroku & >% Eastern
\< Aeth    &              & Æthelred, II   & >% Ancient
\< Attil   &              & Attila, the Hun & >% Ancient
\< Dem     &              & Demetrius, I   & >% Ancient
\< Eliz    &              & Elizabeth, I   & >% Ancient
\< Aris    &              & Aristotle      & >% Mono
\< CSL     & Clive Staples & Lewis         & C.S. >% W. alt.
\< MSens   &              & Miyazaki, Hayao & Sensei >% E. alt.
\end{nameauth}
```

Output	Short Form	Long Form
Washington	\Wash	\Name[George]{Washington}
George Washington	\LWash	\Name*[George]{Washington}
George	\SWash	\FName[George]{Washington}
	\JustIndex\Wash	\IndexName[George]{Washington}
Elizabeth	\SubvertThis\Eliz	\SubvertThis\Name{Elizabeth,I}
Elizabeth I	\ForgetThis\Eliz	\ForgetThis\Name{Elizabeth,I}

English and modern Romance languages keep the particle with the surname. German and other languages do not (cf. Sections 2.3.4 and 2.5).<sup>3</sup>

Macro	Body Text	Index
\VBuren	Martin Van Buren	Van Buren, Martin
\VBuren	Van Buren	Van Buren, Martin
\Soto	Hernando de Soto	de Soto, Hernando
\CapThis\Soto	De Soto	de Soto, Hernando
\JWG	J.W. von Goethe	Goethe, J.W. von
\JWG	Goethe	Goethe, J.W. von

<sup>3</sup>See also [Mulvany, 152–82], and the *Chicago Manual of Style*.



## ⟨Alternate⟩ Tips

Above we listed two shorthands that had alternate names in ⟨arg4⟩: \CSL and \MSens. They have related shorthands whose ⟨arg4⟩ are empty: \Lewis and \Miyaz. Here are how they are related (cf. Section 2.2.2):



- They share the same name patterns (Section 1.5): \ForgetThis\Lewis Clive Staples Lewis; \CSL Lewis. \ForgetThis\Miyaz Miyazaki Hayao; and \MSens Miyazaki.
- More commonly, one produces alternate names with \LLewis[C.S.] C.S. Lewis and \LMiyaz[Sensei] Miyazaki Sensei.
- Both \LCSL C.S. Lewis and \LMSens Miyazaki Sensei already have ⟨Alternate⟩ built in. They cannot take another optional argument. One must remember which shorthands have used ⟨arg4⟩.
- If one should forget that, one will get errors: \LCSL[C.S.] C.S. Lewis[C.S.] and \LMSens[Sensei] Miyazaki Sensei[Sensei].

## Variant Overview

WESTERN:	ANCIENT / MONONYM
\Wash ..... George Washington	\Aris ..... Aristotle
\LWash ..... George Washington	\Aris ..... Aristotle
\Wash ..... Washington	
\SWash ..... George	ANCIENT / ROYAL: (Sections 2.3.3, 2.3.4)
\RevComma\LWash ... Washington, George	\Aeth ..... Æthelred II
	\Aeth ..... Æthelred
PARTICLES: (Section 2.3.4)	\LAeth[Unrædig] ..... Æthelred Unrædig
\Soto ..... Hernando de Soto	\Attil ..... Attila the Hun
\Soto ..... de Soto	\Attil ..... Attila
\CapThis\Soto ..... De Soto	
AFFIXES: (Section 2.3.1)	“NON-NATIVE” EASTERN: (Section 2.3.3)
\Pat ..... George S. Patton Jr.	\Noguchi ..... Hideyo Noguchi
\LPat ..... George S. Patton Jr.	\LNoguchi ..... Hideyo Noguchi
\DropAffix\LPat ..... George S. Patton	\LNoguchi[Doctor] ..... Doctor Noguchi
\Pat ..... Patton	\SNoguchi ..... Hideyo
\SPat ..... George S.	\RevName\LNoguchi ..... Noguchi Hideyo†
	\CapName\RevName\LNoguchi . NOGUCHI Hideyo†
	\CapName\Noguchi ..... NOGUCHI†
NICKNAMES: (Section 2.2.2)	“NATIVE” EASTERN: (Section 2.3.3)
\JRIV ..... John David Rockefeller IV	\CapName\Yamt ..... YAMAMOTO Isoroku
\DropAffix\LRIV[Jay] .. Jay Rockefeller	\CapName\LYamt ..... YAMAMOTO Isoroku
\SJRV[Jay] ..... Jay	\CapName\Yamt ..... YAMAMOTO
\Lewis ..... Clive Staples Lewis	\RevName\LYamt ..... Isoroku Yamamoto
\LLewis[Jack] ..... Jack Lewis	\RevName\LYamt[Admiral] ... Admiral Yamamoto
\SLewis[Jack] ..... Jack	\SYamt ..... Yamamoto
\LCSL ..... C.S. Lewis	\ForceFN\SYamt ..... Isoroku
\SCSL ..... C.S.	

Above we used \ForgetThis (Section 2.8.1) to reset first uses of names. Now we set up examples on page 41 by invoking \ExcludeName{Attila, the Hun} and \AKA[John David]{Rockefeller,IV}[Jay]{Rockefeller} Jay Rockefeller. On why that form has a different index entry than \DropAffix\LRIV[Jay] Jay Rockefeller, see Sections 2.6.2 and 2.9.

### 1.3.3 Select Macro Overview

Below we have a partial selection of macros and their arguments in overview:

$\langle prefix macros \rangle$	<code>\Name</code>	$\langle optional * \rangle$	$\langle name args \rangle$
$\langle prefix macros \rangle$	<code>\FName</code>	$\langle optional * \rangle$	$\langle name args \rangle$
$\langle prefix macros \rangle$	<code>\IndexName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
$\langle prefix macros \rangle$	<code>\IndexRef</code>		$\langle xref args \rangle$ $\langle target \rangle$
$\langle prefix macros \rangle$	<code>\AKA</code>	$\langle optional * \rangle$	$\langle target args \rangle$ $\langle xref args \rangle$
	<code>\ExcludeName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\IncludeName</code>	$\langle optional * \rangle$	$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\PretagName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$ $\langle sort key \rangle$
	<code>\TagName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$ $\langle tag \rangle$
	<code>\UntagName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\NameAddInfo</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$ $\langle tag \rangle$
	<code>\NameQueryInfo</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\NameClearInfo</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\ForgetName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\SubvertName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$
	<code>\IfMainName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$ $\{\langle y \rangle\}\{\langle n \rangle\}$
	<code>\IfFrontName</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$ $\{\langle y \rangle\}\{\langle n \rangle\}$
	<code>\IfAKA</code>		$\langle name args \rangle$ $\{\langle y \rangle\}\{\langle n \rangle\}\{\langle x \rangle\}$

The  $\langle prefix macros \rangle$  below have a one-time effect per name and they also stack. For example: `\CapThis\RevName\SkipIndex\Name[bar]{foo}`: **Foo Bar**.

	<b>Capitalization in the Text</b>
<code>\CapThis</code>	Capitalize first letter of all name components in body text.
<code>\AccentCapThis</code>	Fallback when Unicode detection cannot be done.
<code>\CapName</code>	Cap entire $\langle SNN \rangle$ in body text. Overrides <code>\CapThis</code> .
	<b>Reversing in the Text</b>
<code>\RevName</code>	Reverse order of any name in body text. Overrides <code>\RevComma</code>
<code>\RevComma</code>	Reverse only Western names to $\langle SNN \rangle$ , $\langle FNN \rangle$ .
	<b>Commas in the Text</b>
<code>\ShowComma</code>	Add comma between $\langle SNN \rangle$ and $\langle Affix \rangle$ .
<code>\NoComma</code>	No comma between $\langle SNN \rangle$ and $\langle Affix \rangle$ . Overrides <code>\ShowComma</code> .
	<b>Name Breaks in the Text</b>
<code>\DropAffix</code>	Drop affix only for a long Western name reference.
<code>\KeepAffix</code>	Insert non-breaking space (NBSP) between $\langle SNN \rangle$ , $\langle FNN/Affix \rangle$ .
<code>\KeepName</code>	Insert NBSP between all name elements. Overrides <code>\KeepAffix</code> .
	<b>Forcing Name Forms in the Text</b>
<code>\ForgetThis</code>	Force a first-time name use. Negates <code>\SubvertThis</code> .
<code>\SubvertThis</code>	Force a subsequent use.
<code>\ForceName</code>	Force first-use formatting hooks.
<code>\ForceFN</code>	Force printing of $\langle Affix \rangle$ in non-Western short forms.
	<b>Indexing</b>
<code>\SeeAlso</code>	Make a <i>see also</i> reference instead of a page reference. Only for use with <code>\IndexRef</code> , <code>\AKA</code> , <code>\PName</code> and their starred variants.
<code>\SkipIndex</code>	Do not create index entries.
<code>\JustIndex</code>	Act like <code>\IndexName</code> ; negated by <code>\AKA</code> , <code>\PName</code> .

Back to Section 1.2

## 1.4 Obsolete Syntax



This “ghost” of `nameauth` past limits alternate names and cross-references (Section 2.9), excludes comma-delimited names, and complicates indexing and tagging (Sections 2.6.4 and 2.7). When the  $\langle FNN \rangle$  and  $\langle Affix \rangle$  arguments are empty,  $\langle Alternate \rangle$  acts like  $\langle Affix \rangle$  and affects both name and index patterns (Section 1.5). In this manual we designate these names with a double dagger ( $\ddagger$ ):

```
\Name{Henry}[VIII]           % Ancient
\Name{Chiang}[Kai-shek]      % Eastern
\begin{nameauth}
  < Dagb & & Dagobert & I      > % Ancient
  < Yosh & & Yoshida  & Shigeru > % Eastern
\end{nameauth}
```

<code>\Name{Henry}[VIII]</code>	Henry VIII $\ddagger$
<code>\Name{Henry}[VIII]</code>	Henry $\ddagger$
<code>\Name{Chiang}[Kai-shek]</code>	Chiang Kai-shek $\ddagger$
<code>\Name{Chiang}[Kai-shek]</code>	Chiang $\ddagger$
<code>\Dagb</code>	Dagobert I $\ddagger$
<code>\Dagb</code>	Dagobert $\ddagger$
<code>\CapName\Yosh</code>	YOSHIDA Shigeru $\ddagger$
<code>\CapName\RevName\LYosh</code>	Shigeru YOSHIDA $\ddagger$

**2.6** `\Name{Henry}[VIII]` (older syntax) and `\Name{Henry, VIII}` (new syntax) share name patterns, tags, and index entries, as shown below. We recommend using the newer syntax unless otherwise needed.

```
\NameAddInfo{Henry}[VIII]{ (\textit{Defensor Fidei})} % old
...
\Name*{Henry, VIII}\NameQueryInfo{Henry, VIII}      % new
Henry VIII (Defensor Fidei)
```

Back to Section 1.2

## 1.5 Name Pattern Overview

The table below shows how the macro arguments generate name patterns central to `nameauth`. The  $\langle Alternate \rangle$  argument only affects patterns when using the obsolete syntax. The naming macro arguments create internal control sequences that affect names in both the text and the index:

Macro Arguments	Patterns	Type
$[\langle FNN \rangle]\{\langle SNN \rangle\}$	$\langle FNN \rangle!\langle SNN \rangle$	Western
$[\langle FNN \rangle]\{\langle SNN, Affix \rangle\}$	$\langle FNN \rangle!\langle SNN \rangle, \langle Affix \rangle$	Western
$\{\langle SNN, Affix \rangle\}$	$\langle SNN \rangle, \langle Affix \rangle$	non-Western
$\{\langle SNN \rangle\}[\langle Alt \rangle]$	$\langle SNN \rangle, \langle Alt \rangle$	(obsolete)
$\{\langle SNN \rangle\}$	$\langle SNN \rangle$	mononym

We “forget” several names below to create first-use cases:

Macro	Body Text	\ShowPattern
\Harnack[Adolf von]	Adolf von Harnack	Adolf!Harnack
\LHarnack	Adolf Harnack	Adolf!Harnack
\ForgetThis\Pat	George S. Patton Jr.	GeorgeS.!Patton,Jr.
\DropAffix\LPat	George S. Patton	GeorgeS.!Patton,Jr.
\ForgetThis\Noguchi	Hideyo Noguchi	Hideyo!Noguchi
\RevName\LNoguchi	Noguchi Hideyo†	Hideyo!Noguchi
\ForgetThis\Yamt	Yamamoto Isoroku	Yamamoto,Isoroku
\RevName\LYamt	Isoroku Yamamoto	Yamamoto,Isoroku
\ForgetThis\Name{Henry,VIII}	Henry VIII	Henry,VIII
\Name*{Henry}[VIII]	Henry VIII‡	Henry,VIII
\Dem[I Soter]	Demetrius I Soter	Demetrius,I
\LDem	Demetrius I	Demetrius,I
\ForgetThis\Aris	Aristotle	Aristotle
\Aris	Aristotle	Aristotle

Six suffixes are appended to these patterns to create independent data sets:

Description	Pattern	Mnemonic	Example
Front-matter names	<i>&lt;pattern&gt;</i> !NF	“name front”	Adolf!Harnack!NF
Main-matter names	<i>&lt;pattern&gt;</i> !MN	“main name”	Hideyo!Noguchi!MN
Index cross-refs	<i>&lt;pattern&gt;</i> !PN	“pseudonym”	Yamamoto,Isoroku!PN
Index sorting tags	<i>&lt;pattern&gt;</i> !PRE	“pretag”	Henry,VIII!PRE
Index info tags	<i>&lt;pattern&gt;</i> !TAG	“tag”	Demetrius,I!TAG
“Text tag” database	<i>&lt;pattern&gt;</i> !DB	“database”	Aristotle!DB

The following macros **write** to these data sets; others also can read from them:

Macros	!NF	!MN	!PN	!PRE	!TAG	!DB
\Name \Name* \FName	■	■	■	■	■	■
\ForgetName \SubvertName	■	■	■	■	■	■
\PName\PName*	■	■	■	■	■	■
\AKA \AKA* \IndexRef	■	■	■	■	■	■
\ExcludeName	■	■	■	■	■	■
\IncludeName \IncludeName*	■	■	■	■	■	■
\PretagName	■	■	■	■	■	■
\TagName \UntagName	■	■	■	■	■	■
\NameAddInfo \NameClearInfo	■	■	■	■	■	■

Back to Section 1.2

## 1.6 Debugging and Avoiding Errors

### Debugging Macros

`\ShowPattern`      `\ShowPattern` displays how the name arguments create name patterns. One  
**3.3** can debug pattern collisions and other issues with this macro:

`\ShowPattern[ $\langle FNN \rangle$ ]{ $\langle SNN, Affix \rangle$ }[ $\langle Alternate \rangle$ ]`

We used `\ShowPattern` in two of the tables on the previous page in order to illustrate name control patterns. We set the macro using a typewriter font, e.g.:  
`\texttt{\ShowPattern[Hernando]{de Soto}: Hernando!deSoto}`

`\ShowIdxPageref`      `\ShowIdxPageref` displays a full index entry in the text. Its analogue is  
`\ShowIdxPageref*`      `\ShowIdxPageref*`, which shows a short index entry. Both only show names as  
**3.3** page references, even if they are cross-references:

`\ShowIdxPageref [ $\langle FNN \rangle$ ]{ $\langle SNN, Affix \rangle$ }[ $\langle Alternate \rangle$ ]  
\ShowIdxPageref* [ $\langle FNN \rangle$ ]{ $\langle SNN, Affix \rangle$ }[ $\langle Alternate \rangle$ ]`

The full entry produced by `\ShowIdxPageref` can be affected by both index styles and tags produced by `\PretagName` and `\TagName`, e.g.:

```
\texttt{\ShowIdxPageref[Hernando]{de Soto}:  
Desoto, Hernando=de Soto, Hernando|hyperpage
```

`\ShowIdxPageref*` appears throughout this manual to illustrate basic index entries, e.g.: `\ShowIdxPageref*[Hernando]{de Soto}: de Soto, Hernando`

### Avoiding Common Errors

- Keep it simple! Avoid unneeded macros and use the simplified interface.
- Compare index entries with names in the body text.
- Check package warnings. Set the `verbose` option if needed.
- Check arguments' braces and brackets to avoid errors like “Paragraph ended” and “Missing *grouping token* inserted.”
- Do not format  $\langle SNN \rangle, \langle Affix \rangle$  together as a pair. Format  $\langle SNN \rangle$  and  $\langle Affix \rangle$  separately (Section 2.5).
- Sort names in the index with `\PretagName` (Section 2.6.3).
- In package docs (dtx files) set up the `nameauth` environment and tags in the driver section to avoid errors.

### Obsolete Syntax Caution

- The older syntax has restrictions (Section 1.4). Only the new syntax permits variant names, e.g.: `\Name*{Henry, VIII}[Tudor] Henry Tudor`. The new syntax is preferred.
- A proper form for the old syntax is `\Name*{Henry}[VIII]: Henry VIII`.
- `\Name[Henry]{VIII}` is a malformed Western name: “Henry VIII” and “VIII.” Likewise `\Name[Henry]{VIII}[Tudor]: Tudor VIII` and “VIII.” Both have the incorrect index entry “VIII, Henry”.

## Standard Warnings

- If one defines shorthand macros in the `nameauth` environment whose control sequence already exists, warnings always appear. For example:

```

1 \PretagName[E.\,B.]{White}{White, E.B.}
2 \begin{nameauth}
3 \< White & E.B. & White & > % v.1
4 \< White & E.\,B. & White & > % v.2
5 \end{nameauth}

```

- `\White` gives “**E. B. White**”. Its pattern is: `E.\,B.!White`. We lost the first version. We forget `White` for later. There should be two package warnings in this section for the redefinition of `\White`, because we defined it in the driver, then again here twice.
- This could be a problem if a name shorthand replaces an actual macro that is used for something else and breaks that macro.
- Then again, if one uses, e.g., a new `nameauth` environment per chapter, these warnings may be harmless. User discretion is advised.

## Verbose Warnings

Package warnings result from the following **only** when the **verbose** option is used because we do not want the default to be “chatty”:

- Creating an index page reference after using a name as an xref or excluding it. Not allowed.
- Creating the same cross-reference multiple times. Not allowed.
- Using `\ExcludeName` on an xref. Not allowed.
- Using `\IncludeName` on an xref. Not allowed.
- Using `\ExcludeName` to exclude a name that exists is allowed, but a warning still results.
- `\PretagName` sorts xrefs, but also creates “informational warnings.”
- Using `\TagName` and `\UntagName` on xrefs. No tag allowed.

## Error Protection Strategies

extra spaces    The `nameauth` package trims extra spaces **around** name arguments to prevent errors like multiple index entries that appear due to extra spaces. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X usually compacts internal spaces. For example, instead of being two different names, below we have the same name in a first, then subsequent use:

<code>\Name*[Martin Luther]{King,Jr.}</code>	Martin Luther King Jr.
<code>\Name*[_,,Martin_,,Luther_,,]{_,,King_,,_,,Jr.,,}</code>	Martin Luther King Jr.

This does not include explicit spaces from `\space`, etc. For example, the pattern `MartinLuther!King,Jr.` comes from `\Name[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}` while `Martin~Luther!King,Jr.` comes from `\Name[Martin~Luther]{King, Jr.}`. The tilde appears as a non-breaking space in the text.

full stop detection Full stops appear in one’s initials and in affixes like “Jr.” (junior), “Sr.” (senior), “d. J.” (*der Jüngere*), and “d. Ä.” (*der Ältere*). The naming macros and some of the alternate name macros (Section 2.9) check if the printed name ends with a full stop and is followed by one. They gobble the extra full stop:

```
This is Rev. Dr. \Name[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}.
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.           Full stop is gobbled.

This is Rev. Dr. \Name[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}.
This is Rev. Dr. King.                             Full stop is not gobbled.

Again we speak fully of \Name*[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}.
Again we speak fully of Martin Luther King Jr.     Full stop is gobbled.

We drop the affix: \DropAffix\Name*[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}.
We drop the affix: Martin Luther King.             Full stop is not gobbled.

His initials are \FName[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}[M.L.].
His initials are M.L.                             Full stop is gobbled.
```

grouping issues Take care when using braces and spaces with a name at the end of a sentence. Braces can change name arguments, even though they look the same. We disable indexing for the three points below:

- If one encapsulates a name in braces, the punctuation detection fails:  

```
This is Rev. Dr. {\Name*[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}}.
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr..           Full stop is not gobbled.
```

A solution encapsulates both the name and the full stop:  

```
This is Rev. Dr. {\Name*[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}}.
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.           Full stop is gobbled.
```
- If one encapsulates  $\langle Affix \rangle$  in braces, the punctuation detection fails:  

```
This is Rev. Dr. \Name*[Martin Luther]{King, {Jr.}}.
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr..           Full stop is not gobbled.
```

The solution leaves the full stop in  $\langle Affix \rangle$  outside the braces:  

```
This is Rev. Dr. \Name*[Martin Luther]{King, {Jr.}}.
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.           Full stop is gobbled.
```

The name patterns, however, are different, creating different names:  

```
MartinLuther!King,{Jr.}
MartinLuther!King,{Jr}.
```
- If one leaves an extra space after a name, the punctuation detection fails:  

```
This is Rev. Dr. \Name*[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}\_ .
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr. .           Full stop is not gobbled.
```

The solution removes the extra space:  

```
This is Rev. Dr. \Name*[Martin Luther]{King, Jr.}.
This is Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.           Full stop is gobbled.
```

active chars and macros Variations in the use of active characters and control sequences also change name arguments and index sorting (Section 2.6.3; cf. 2.11.2 and 2.11.3):

- `\Name*{\AEthelred, II} \AEthelred II;` Pattern:  $\tilde{\text{A}}\tilde{\text{E}}\text{thelred,II}$ <sup>4</sup>  
We have seen this name earlier.
- `\SkipIndex\Name{\AE thelred, II} \AEthelred II;` Pattern:  $\backslash\text{A}\text{E}\text{thelred,II}$   
This is a new name that looks the same.

<sup>4</sup>With `pdflatex` / `latex`, the glyphs  $\tilde{\text{A}}\tilde{\text{E}}$  correspond to `\IeC{\AE}`.

- `\Name{Bo\"ethius}` **Boëthius**; Pattern: `Bo\"ethius`  
We introduce this new name.
- `\SkipIndex\Name{Boëthius}` **Boëthius** Pattern: `Bo\~{A}nthius`<sup>5</sup>  
This is a different name that looks the same.
- `\SkipIndex\Name{Bo{\"e}thius}` **Boëthius**; Pattern: `Bo{\"e}thius`  
This also is a different name that looks the same.

formatting initials Omit spaces between initials; see Bringhurst, *Elements of Typographic Style*.  
If a style guide requires spaces, try thin spaces. Use `\PretagName` to sort those names (Section 2.6.3). Below we use no formatting:

<pre> 1 \PretagName[E.\,B.]{White}% 2   {White, E.B.} 3 \begin{nameauth} 4   \&lt; White &amp; E.\,B. &amp; White &amp; &gt; 5 \end{nameauth} </pre>	<div style="border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; text-align: center;"> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div> <div style="display: inline-block; width: 100px; height: 1.2em; border-right: 1px solid black;"></div>
--	--

hyphenation English contains names from many cultures. The rules for hyphenation go to the heart of how names with non-English origins should be pronounced. With `nameauth`, one can use either optional hyphens or the `babel` / `polyglossia` packages to handle such names:

```

1 \newcommand\de[1]{\foreignlanguage{ngerman}{#1}}
2 % or polyglossia: \newcommand\de[1]{\textgerman{#1}}
3 \NameAddInfo[John]{\de{Strietelmeier}}%
4   {late professor at Valparaiso University}
5 \begin{nameauth}
6   \< Striet & John & \de{Strietelmeier} & >
7 \end{nameauth}
8 \PretagName[John]{\de{Strietelmeier}}{Strietelmeier, John}

```

#### Not fixed:

In English, some names come from other cultures. These names, like **John Strietelmeier** `\SkipIndex\Name[John]{Strietelmeier}` can break badly.

#### Fixed with discretionary hyphens:

In English, some names come from other cultures. These names, like **John Strietelmeier**, `\SkipIndex\Name[John]{Strie\~{-}tel\~{-}meier}` could break badly.

#### Fixed with language packages:

In English, some names come from other cultures. These names, like **John Strietelmeier**, `\Striet` could break badly.

**Strietelmeier** (late professor at Valparaiso University) is neither pronounced nor hyphenated as “Stri-etel-meier”; rather, it is pronounced and hyphenated as “Strie-tel-meier”. See Sections 2.3.4 and 2.5 when using macros in name arguments. Using `babel` or `polyglossia` likely is best.

Back to Section 1.2

<sup>5</sup>With `pdflatex` / `latex`, the glyphs `Ã` and `ñ` correspond to `\IeC{\"e}`.



## 2 Detailed Usage

### 2.1 Package Options

One includes the nameauth package thus:

`\usepackage[<option1>,<option2>,...,<optionn>]{nameauth}`

The options have no required order. Still, we discuss them from the general to the specific, as the headings below indicate. In the listings below, **implicit default options are boldface and need not be invoked by the user.** Non-default options are in red and must be invoked explicitly.

#### Choosing Features

##### Enable Package Warnings

**verbose** Show warnings about index cross-references.

- 3.0** The default suppresses package warnings from the indexing macros. Warnings from the `nameauth` environment are not suppressed.

##### Choose Formatting

<b>mainmatter</b>	Start with “main-matter names” and formatting hooks (see also page 19).
<b>frontmatter</b>	Start with “front-matter names” and hooks.
<b>alwaysformat</b>	Use only respective “first use” formatting hooks.
<b>formatAKA</b>	Format the first use of a name with <code>\AKA</code> like the first use of a name with <code>\Name</code> .
<b>oldAKA</b>	Force <code>\AKA*</code> to act like it did before version 3.0.
<b>oldreset</b>	Reset per-use name flags locally within the naming macros, as before version 3.3.
<b>oldpass</b>	When <code>\Justindex</code> is called, allow long/short flags to pass through, as before version 3.3.

The `mainmatter` option and the `frontmatter` option enable two different systems of name use and formatting. They are mutually exclusive. `\NamesActive` starts the main matter system when `frontmatter` is used. See Section 2.4.

The `alwaysformat` option forces “first use” hooks globally in both naming systems. Its use is limited in current versions of `nameauth`.

- 3.1** The `formatAKA` option permits `\AKA` to use the “first use” formatting hooks. This enables `\ForceName` to trigger those hooks at will (Section 2.9). Otherwise `\AKA` uses “subsequent use” hooks.
- 3.0** Using the `oldAKA` option forces `\AKA*` always to print a “forename” argument in the text, as in versions before 3.0. Otherwise the current behavior of `\AKA*` prints in the same fashion as `\FName` (see Sections 2.2.2 and 2.9).
- 3.3** Used together, the next two options restore pre-version 3.3 handling of flags that could lead to undocumented behavior. The `oldreset` option causes all Boolean flags related to the prefix macros and long/short name forms to be reset locally. The new default is to reset them globally (Section 2.10.4). Likewise, the `oldpass` option allows the long/short flags to pass through `\JustIndex` instead of being reset (Section 2.6.1).

## Enable / Disable Indexing

<code>index</code>	Create index entries in place with names.
<code>noindex</code>	Suppress indexing of names.

These options and related macros do not affect the normal use of `\index`. They apply only to the `nameauth` package macros. The default `index` option enables name indexing right away. The `noindex` option disables the indexing of names until `\IndexActive` enables it. **Caution:** using `noindex` and `\IndexInactive` prevents index tags until you call `\IndexActive`, as explained also in Section 2.6.1.



## Enable / Disable Index Sorting

<code>pretag</code>	Create sort keys used with <code>makeindex</code> .
<code>nopretag</code>	Do not create sort keys.

The default allows `\PretagName` to create sort keys used with `makeindex`. The `nopretag` option disables the sorting mechanism, e.g., if a different sorting method is used with `xindy`. See Section 2.6.3.

## Affect the Syntax of Names

### Show / Hide Affix Commas

<code>nocomma</code>	Suppress commas between surnames and affixes, following the <i>Chicago Manual of Style</i> and other conventions.
<code>comma</code>	Retain commas between surnames and affixes.

If you use **modern standards**, choose the default `nocomma` option to get, e.g., [James Earl Carter Jr.](#) If you need to adopt **older standards** that use commas between surnames and affixes, you have two choices:

1. The `comma` option globally produces, e.g., [James Earl Carter, Jr.](#)
2. Section 2.3.1 shows how one can use `\ShowComma` with the `nocomma` option and `\NoComma` with the `comma` option to get per-name results.

In both cases, the display of commas (or the lack thereof) does not affect the appearance or the sorting of index entries.

### Capitalize Entire Surnames

<code>normalcaps</code>	Do not perform any special capitalization.
<code>allcaps</code>	Capitalize entire surnames, e.g., romanized Eastern names.

This only capitalizes names printed in the body text. English standards usually do not propagate typographic changes into the index.

Still, you can use this package with non-English conventions (just not via these options). You can add, e.g., uppercase or small caps in surnames, formatting them also in the index. See also Sections 2.5 and 2.10.3. The simplified interface aids the embedding of control sequences in names. Section 2.3.3 deals with capitalization on a section-level and per-name basis.

## Reverse Name Order

<code>notreversed</code>	Print names in the order specified by <code>\Name</code> and the other macros.
<code>allreversed</code>	Print all name forms in “smart” reverse order.
<code>allrevcomma</code>	Print all names in “Surname, Forenames” order, meant for Western names.

These three options are mutually exclusive. Section 2.3.3 speaks more about reversing. The `allreversed` option, `\ReverseActive`, and `\RevName` work with all names and override `allrevcomma` and its macros.

So-called “last-comma-first” lists of names via `allrevcomma` and the reversing macros `\ReverseCommaActive` and `\RevComma` (Section 2.3.2) are **not** the same as the `comma` option. They only affect Western names.

## Typographic Post-Processing

### Formatting Attributes

<code>noformat</code>	Do not define a default format.
<code>smallcaps</code>	First use of a main-matter name in small caps.
<code>italic</code>	First use of a main-matter name in italic.
<code>boldface</code>	First use of a main-matter name in boldface.

- 2.5 Current versions assign no default formatting to names. Most users have preferred the `noformat` option as the default and then design their own hooks as needed.<sup>6</sup> The options above are “quick” solutions based on English typography.

- 2.4 What was “typographic formatting” has become a generalized concept of “post-processing” via hook macros.<sup>7</sup> Post-processing does not affect the index. Sections 2.4, 2.10.1, 2.10.2, and 2.10.3 explain these hooks in greater detail:

- `\NamesFormat` formats first uses of main-matter names.
- `\MainNameHook` formats subsequent uses of main-matter names.
- `\FrontNamesFormat` formats first uses of front-matter names.
- `\FrontNameHook` formats subsequent uses of front-matter names.

`\global` Changes to the formatting hooks apply within the scope where they are made. Use `\global` explicitly to alter that. `\NamesFormat` originally was the only hook, so any oddity in the naming of these hooks results from the need for backward compatibility with old versions.

Section 2.9 discusses how `\AKA` does not respect these formatting systems and uses the hooks differently. To avoid using the `formatAKA` option and `\ForceName` with `\AKA`, Section 2.6.2 shows how to use `\IndexRef` and `\Name` instead.

---

<sup>6</sup>For those that want the old default option from the early days of this package, one can recover that behavior with the `smallcaps` option.

<sup>7</sup>This package was designed with type hierarchies and flexibility in mind. See Robert Bringhurst, *The Elements of Typographic Style*, version 3.2 (Point Roberts, Washington: Hartley & Marks, 2008), 53–60. Typographic inspiration comes from Bernhard Lohse, *Luthers Theologie* (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1995) and Jaroslav J. Pelikan Jr., *The Christian Tradition: A History of the Development of Doctrine*, 5 vols. (Chicago: Chicago UP, 1971–89).

## Alternate or Continental Formatting

### Alternate Formatting

**altformat**      Make available the alternate formatting framework from the start of the document. Activate formatting by default.

- 3.1** A built-in framework provides an alternate formatting mechanism that can be used for “Continental” formatting that one sees in German, French, and so on. Continental standards often format surnames only, both in the text and in the index. Section 2.5 introduces the topic and should be sufficient for most users, while Section 2.10.3 goes into greater detail.

The previous methods that produced Continental formatting were rather complex compared to the current, simplified manner of doing so. Yet it is likely that these older solutions still ought to work. The error protection that prevents `\CapThis` from breaking alternately formatted names remains available to these older solutions by using `altformat` or the related macros (Section 2.5).

### Feature Priority

The following table shows the relative priority of package options and macros related to indexing, capitalization, and reversing. The darker the row, the lower the priority. Those macros or options in a particular category (column) that have higher priority (row) tend to override similar macros that have lower priority in that same category.

Thus, `\IndexInactive` overrides `\JustIndex`, which overrides `\SkipIndex`; using `\SeeAlso` depends entirely on the interaction of the three others.

Indexing	Capitalization	Reversing	Name Forms, Commas, Breaks
<code>index</code>	<code>normalcaps</code>	<code>notreversed</code>	<code>\ForgetThis</code>
<code>noindex</code>	<code>allcaps</code>	<code>allreversed</code>	<code>\DropAffix</code>
<code>\IndexActive</code>	<code>\AllCapsInactive</code>	<code>\ReverseActive</code>	
<code>\IndexInactive</code>	<code>\AllCapsActive</code>	<code>\ReverseInactive</code>	
<code>\JustIndex</code>	<code>\CapName</code>	<code>\RevName</code>	<code>\SubvertThis</code>
			<code>\ForceName</code>
			<code>\NoComma</code>
<code>\SkipIndex</code>	<code>\AccentCapThis</code>	<code>allrevcomma</code>	<code>\KeepName</code>
		<code>\RevCommaActive</code>	<code>\ForceFN</code>
		<code>\RevCommaInactive</code>	<code>\ShowComma</code>
<code>\SeeAlso</code>	<code>\CapThis</code>	<code>\RevComma</code>	<code>\KeepAffix</code>

Back to Section 1.2

## 2.2 Naming Macros

In this manual we modify the formatting hooks to show first and later name uses, forcing such uses as needed (Sections 2.4 and 2.8.1). All naming macros create index entries before and after a name for when a name straddles a page break.

### 2.2.1 \Name and \Name\*

`\Name` `\Name` displays and indexes names. It always prints the  $\langle SNN \rangle$  argument. `\Name` prints the full name at the first occurrence, then usually just the  $\langle SNN \rangle$  argument thereafter. `\Name*` always prints the full name:

```
\Name [ $\langle FNN \rangle$ ]{ $\langle SNN, Affix \rangle$ }[ $\langle Alternate \rangle$ ]  

\Name* [ $\langle FNN \rangle$ ]{ $\langle SNN, Affix \rangle$ }[ $\langle Alternate \rangle$ ]
```

**3.0** In the body text, not the index, the  $\langle Alternate \rangle$  argument replaces either  $\langle FNN \rangle$  or, if  $\langle FNN \rangle$  is absent,  $\langle Affix \rangle$ .<sup>8</sup> If both  $\langle FNN \rangle$  and  $\langle Affix \rangle$  are absent, then the obsolete syntax is used (Section 1.4).

```
1 \begin{nameauth}  
2   \< Einstein & Albert & Einstein & >  
3   \< Cicero & M.T. & Cicero & >  
4   \< Confucius & & Confucius & >  
5   \< Miyaz & & Miyazaki, Hayao & >  
6   \< Eliz & & Elizabeth, I & >  
7 \end{nameauth}
```

---

<code>\Name [Albert]{Einstein} or \Einstein</code>	Albert Einstein
<code>\Name*[Albert]{Einstein} or \LEinstein</code>	Albert Einstein
<code>\Name [Albert]{Einstein} or \Einstein</code>	Einstein
<code>\Name [M.T.]{Cicero} or \Cicero</code>	M.T. Cicero
<code>\Name*[M.T.]{Cicero}[Marcus Tullius]</code>	Marcus Tullius Cicero
<code>\Name [M.T.]{Cicero} or \Cicero</code>	Cicero
<code>\Name {Confucius}, \Confucius</code>	Confucius
Same for all variants; no $\langle Affix \rangle$ or $\langle Alternate \rangle$ .	
<code>\Name {Miyazaki, Hayao} or \Miyaz</code>	Miyazaki Hayao
<code>\Name*{Miyazaki, Hayao}[Sensei]</code>	Miyazaki Sensei
<code>\Name {Miyazaki, Hayao} or \Miyaz</code>	Miyazaki
<code>\Name {Elizabeth, I} or \Eliz</code>	Elizabeth I
<code>\Name*{Elizabeth, I} or \LEliz</code>	Elizabeth I
<code>\Name {Elizabeth, I} or \Eliz</code>	Elizabeth

---

When using the simplified interface, the preferred way to get alternate names is `\LCicero[Marcus Tullius]` and `\LMiyaz[Sensei]`: Marcus Tullius Cicero and Miyazaki Sensei. The alternate forename is not shown in subsequent short name references e.g., `\Cicero[Marcus Tullius]` Cicero.

<sup>8</sup>If  $\langle Alternate \rangle$  is `\ignorespaces`, the Western long form of `\Name` looks like the short form. “Native” Eastern and ancient forms would have an extra trailing space.

## 2.2.2 Forenames: \FName

`\FName` and its synonym `\FName*` print personal names only in subsequent name uses. They print full names for first uses. These synonyms let one add an `F` either to `\Name` or `\Name*` to get the same effect:

```
\FName [\FNN]{\SNN, Affix}{\Alternate}
\FName*[\FNN]{\SNN, Affix}{\Alternate}
```

**3.0** `\ForceFN` These macros work with both Eastern and Western names, but to get an Eastern personal name, one must precede these macros with `\ForceFN`. See also Sections 2.3.4 and 2.8.1 on how to vary some of the forms below:

<code>\FName[Albert]{Einstein}</code> or <code>\SEinstein</code>	Albert
<code>\FName[M.T.]{Cicero}[Marcus Tullius]</code> or <code>\SCicero[Marcus Tullius]</code>	Marcus Tullius
<code>\FName{Confucius}</code> or <code>\SConfucius</code>	Confucius
<code>\FName{Miyazaki, Hayao}</code> or <code>\SMiyaz</code>	Miyazaki
<code>\ForceFN\FName{Miyazaki, Hayao}</code> or <code>\ForceFN\SMiyaz</code>	Hayao
<code>\ForceFN\FName{Miyazaki, Hayao}[Sensei]</code> or <code>\ForceFN\SMiyaz[Sensei]</code>	Sensei
<code>\FName{Elizabeth, I}</code> or <code>\SELiz</code>	Elizabeth
<code>\ForceFN\SELiz[Good Queen Bess]</code>	Good Queen Bess

The `\Alternate` argument replaces forenames in the text, which strongly shapes the use of `\FName`.<sup>9</sup> We recap what we saw on page 9, emphasizing forenames:

```
1 \begin{nameauth}
2 \< Lewis & Clive Staples & Lewis & >
3 \< CSL & Clive Staples & Lewis & C.S. >
4 \< Ches & Chesley B. & Sullenberger, III & >
5 \< Sully & Chesley B. & Sullenberger, III & Sully >
6 \< Miyaz & & Miyazaki, Hayao & >
7 \< MSens & & Miyazaki, Hayao & Sensei >
8 \end{nameauth}
```

These share name patterns: `\SCSL C.S.`, `\SLewis Clive Staples`; `\SChes Chesley B. Sullenberger III`, `\SSully Sully`; `\SMiyaz Miyazaki`, `\SMSens Miyazaki`.

Equivalents: `\SCSL C.S.`, `\SLewis[C.S.] C.S.`; `\SSully Sully`, `\SChes[Sully] Sully`; `\ForceFN\SMSens Sensei`, `\ForceFN\SMiyaz[Sensei]: Sensei`.



These fail: `\SCSL[Jack]: C.S.[Jack]`; `\SSully[Chesley]: Sully[Chesley]`; and `\ForceFN\SMSens[Hayao]: Sensei[Hayao]`. Whenever `\arg4` of the `nameauth` environment is used, the respective shorthands cannot take optional arguments.

Back to Section 1.2

<sup>9</sup>If `\Alternate` is `\ignorespaces`, the Western long form of `\FName` looks like the short form of `\Name`, while the Western short form of `\FName` acts like `\leavevmode` and prints nothing. “Native” Eastern and ancient forms would have an extra trailing space.

## 2.2.3 Variant Names

- 3.1** This section explains how to manage more complicated variants, which gives one the skills needed to implement a name authority. We draw from Sections 2.4, 2.6.2, 2.6.3, 2.8.1, and 2.9. One might want to consult those sections also.

variant forenames We begin with the easier kind of variant names, namely, variant forenames indexed under a canonical name entry:

```
1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< Tyson & Mike & Tyson & >
3   \< Iron & Mike & Tyson & Iron Mike >
4 \end{nameauth}

Same pattern:  \Iron  Iron Mike Tyson  \LTyson  Mike Tyson
                \SIron  Iron Mike       \STyson  Mike
```

Since Iron Mike Tyson is indexed as “Tyson, Mike” throughout the document, we can use `\IndexRef{Iron Mike}{Tyson, Mike}` with no output in the text or `\AKA[Mike]{Tyson}{Iron Mike}` Iron Mike to print a name. Both create the cross-reference “Iron Mike *see* Tyson, Mike” in the index.

variant surnames Variant family names are more complicated than variant personal names. For surname variants, one can use the following method to get fairly good results, depending on the trade-offs that one wishes to accept:

```
1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< DuBois & W.E.B. & Du~Bois & >
3   \< AltDuBois & W.E.B. & DuBois & >
4 \end{nameauth}
5 \PretagName[W.E.B.]{Du~Bois}{Dubois, W.E.B.}
```

1. We decide the canonical name form: `\DuBois W.E.B. Du Bois`.
2. Both `\Name[W.E.B.]{Du Bois}` and `\Name[W.E.B.]{DuBois}` have the pattern “W.E.B. !DuBois” (Section 1.5). Here we use Du~Bois as the argument because we want no breaks, giving us “W.E.B. !Du~Bois”.
3. We set the sort key for both names to be {Dubois, W.E.B.}. If it were of the form {Du Bois, W.E.B.}, they would sort differently (Section 2.6.3). One must check a style manual for proper sorting.
4. Instead of using `\SkipIndex\AltDuBois` many times, we create a cross-reference in the preamble so that no page entry for the alternate form will occur in the index:

```
\IndexRef[W.E.B.]{DuBois}{Du Bois, W.E.B.}
```

5. We can use `\JustIndex\DuBois\AltDuBois W.E.B. DuBois`, keep full stop detection, and check if the name straddles a page break in order to append `\JustIndex\DuBois` if needed.
6. If we create a macro like the one below, we lose full stop detection but then we do not have to check if the name straddles a page break. Normally, the name macros create two index entries each in order to handle this issue automatically:

```
\newcommand\NewDuBois%
{\JustIndex\DuBois\AltDubois\JustIndex\DuBois}
```

## Example Name Authority

Below are a couple of names from a name authority created for a translation of *De Diaconis et Diaconissis Veteris Ecclesiae Liber Commentarius* by [Caspar Ziegler](#), of which the present author was the editor.<sup>10</sup>

Constructing that name authority was a challenge. In order to get the names right — the deceased translator unfortunately had left them in abbreviated Latin, as well as leaving many place names in Latin or translating them incorrectly — the present author used the following sources, among several others:

- CERL Thesaurus: [https://data.cerl.org/thesaurus/\\_search](https://data.cerl.org/thesaurus/_search)
- Virtual International Authority File: <http://viaf.org/>
- EDIT16: [http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web\\_iccu/ehome.htm](http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web_iccu/ehome.htm)
- WorldCat: <https://www.worldcat.org/>
- An older version of Graesse, *Orbis Latinus*:  
<http://www.columbia.edu/acis/ets/Graesse/contents.html>

This author followed the scholarly standards for determining the canonical name forms and used the alternate names (which were the ones actually in the original text) to refer to the canonical forms. I just translated all the place-names.

Below we have candidates for sorting with `\PretagName` (Section 2.6.3) and potential use of `\CapThis` (Section 2.3.4). After using `\IndexRef` with a particular name, using `\Name` with that same name will not create a page reference from that point onward (Section 2.6.2).

```
1 \PretagName[Jacques]{De~Pamele}{Depamele, Jacques}
2 \Name[Jacques]{De~Pamele}[Jacques de~Joigny]
3 \IndexRef[Jacobus]{Pamelius}{De~Pamele, Jacques}
4 \Name[Jacobus]{Pamelius}
5
6 \PretagName[Giovanni]{d'Andrea}{Dandrea, Giovanni}
7 \Name[Giovanni]{d'Andrea}
8 \IndexRef[Ioannes]{Andreae}{d'Andrea, Giovanni}
9 \Name[Ioannes]{Andreae}
```

Canonical Name	Alternate Name
Jacques de Joigny De Pamele	Jacobus Pamelius
Giovanni d'Andrea	Ioannes Andreae

`D'Andrea \CapThis\Name[Giovanni]{d'Andrea}` can be used at the beginning of a sentence. `\Name[Jacques]{De~Pamele}` gives `De Pamele`.

Back to Section 1.2

<sup>10</sup>The book, *The Diaconate of the Ancient and Medieval Church*, originally was typeset using  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , but had to be converted to a different format. Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , the present author has published Charles P. Schaum and Albert B. Collver III, *Breath of God, Yet Work of Man: Scripture, Philosophy, Dialogue, and Conflict* (St. Louis: Concordia Publishing House, 2019).



## 2.3 Language Topics

This section looks at how `nameauth` addresses grammar, usage, and cultural standards. The concept of comma-delimited affixes dominates much of this section.

### 2.3.1 Affixes Require Commas

A comma is required to separate a Western surname and affix, an Eastern family name and personal name, and an ancient name and affix. Yet we must take care because an example like `\Name{\textsc{a Name, Problem}}` will halt L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X with errors (Section 2.5). Spaces around the comma are ignored (Section 1.6).

<code>\Name[Oskar]{Hammerstein, II}</code>	Oskar Hammerstein II
<code>\Name[Oskar]{Hammerstein, II}</code>	Hammerstein
<code>\Name{Louis, XIV}</code>	Louis XIV
<code>\Name{Louis, XIV}</code>	Louis
<code>\Name{Sun, Yat-sen}</code>	Sun Yat-sen
<code>\Name{Sun, Yat-sen}</code>	Sun



Western names with affixes must use the comma-delimited syntax. Using the obsolete syntax, `\SkipIndex\Name[Oskar]{Hammerstein}[II]` produces **II Hammerstein** which is an error. See also (Section 2.9).

- `\KeepAffix` In the text only, `\KeepAffix` turns the space **between**  $\langle SNN \rangle$  and  $\langle Affix \rangle$  into a non-breaking space. This holds for a Western surname and affix, an ancient name and affix, and a “native” Eastern family name and personal name.
- `\KeepName` In the text only, `\KeepName` turns all spaces **between** name elements  $\langle FNN \rangle$ ,  $\langle SNN \rangle$ , and  $\langle Affix \rangle$  into non-breaking spaces; `\KeepName\LJWG[von] von Goethe` will not break. This macro does not alter spaces **within** name elements like  $\langle FNN \rangle$  (French or German forenames) and  $\langle SNN \rangle$  (Spanish surnames). Both `\KeepAffix` and `\KeepName` can affect `nameauth` macros that print in the text.
- `\DropAffix` Preceding the naming macros with `\DropAffix` will suppress an affix in a Western name. `\DropAffix\Name*[Oskar]{Hammerstein, II}` produces “Oskar Hammerstein.” This does not affect non-Western names.
- `\ShowComma` `\ShowComma` forces a comma between a Western name and its affix. It works like the `comma` option on a per-name basis, and only in the body text. `\NoComma` works like the `nocomma` option in the body text on a per-name basis. Neither of these macros affect the use of `\RevComma`, which always prints a comma.

<code>\ShowComma\Name*[Louis]{Gossett, Jr.}</code>	Louis Gossett, Jr.
<code>\NoComma\Name*[Louis]{Gossett, Jr.}</code>	Louis Gossett Jr.

Back to Section 1.2

### 2.3.2 Listing Western names by Surname

`\ReverseCommaActive` In addition to the options for reversed comma listing (Section 2.1), the macros  
`\ReverseCommaInactive` `\ReverseCommaActive` and `\ReverseCommaInactive` function the same way with  
`\RevComma` blocks of text. They all override `\RevComma`. These all reorder long Western name  
forms (via `\Name*` and the like). The first two are broad toggles, while the third  
**3.0** works on a per-name basis. These macros only affect Western and “non-native”  
Eastern name forms.

Martin Van Buren	Van Buren, Martin	OK
Oskar Hammerstein II	Hammerstein II, Oskar	OK
Hideyo Noguchi	Noguchi, Hideyo†	OK
Æthelred II	Æthelred II	no change
Chiang Kai-shek	Chiang Kai-shek	no change
Confucius	Confucius	no change

`\global` Both `\ReverseCommaActive` and `\ReverseCommaInactive` can be used either  
as a pair or singly within a local scope. Use `\global` to force a global effect.

Back to Section 1.2

### 2.3.3 Eastern Names

“non-native” One produces a “non-native” Eastern name in the text by reversing a Western  
without `<Affix>` using `\RevName`:

```
\RevName\Name*{<FNN>}{<SNN>}[<Alternate>]
```

The index entry of this name form looks like `<SNN>`, `<FNN>` (including the  
comma). This is a Western index entry. This form is used also for Hungarian  
names, e.g.: `\RevName\Name[Frenc]{Molnár} Molnár Frenc†`, `Molnár†`.

“native” In contrast, “native” Eastern names use either comma-delimited syntax or the  
obsolete syntax. They have Eastern-form index entries `<SNN>` `<Affix/Alternate>`  
(no comma). The new syntax permits alternate names; the obsolete does not.  
These forms work also with ancient and medieval names:

```
\Name{<SNN, Affix>}[<Alternate>] % new syntax
\Name{<SNN>}[<Alternate>] % obsolete syntax
```

avoid error People can make mistakes that these forms help one to avoid. For exam-  
ple, in an otherwise excellent German-language history textbook series, one finds  
an index entry for “Yat-sen, Sun”. It should be “Sun Yat-sen”.<sup>11</sup> The form  
`\Name{Sun, Yat-sen} Sun` ensures the correct entry.

`\ReverseActive` In addition to the options for reversing (Section 2.1), `\ReverseActive` and  
`\ReverseInactive` `\ReverseInactive` reverse name order for blocks of text. These all override the  
`\RevName` use of `\RevName`, which reverses once per name. These macros do not affect the

<sup>11</sup>See Immanuel Geiss, *Personen: Die biographische Dimension der Weltgeschichte*, Geschichte  
Griffbereit vol. 2 (Munich: Wissen Media Verlag, 2002), 720. Errors arising from cultural differ-  
ences and basic mistakes give justification for the design of `nameauth`.

index. They work also with `\AKA` and its derivatives. The reverse mechanism shows only in full names, but it does not force full names. “Non-native” forms are shown by a dagger (†) in the next table:

	unchanged	<code>\RevName</code>
<code>\LNoguchi</code>	Hideyo Noguchi	Noguchi Hideyo†
<code>\LNoguchi[Doctor]</code>	Doctor Noguchi	_____
<code>\LNoguchi[Sensei]</code>	_____	Noguchi Sensei†
<code>\Noguchi</code>	Noguchi	Noguchi†
<code>\SNoguchi</code>	Hideyo	Hideyo†
<code>\LYamt</code>	Yamamoto Isoroku	Isoroku Yamamoto
<code>\LYamt[Admiral]</code>	_____	Admiral Yamamoto
<code>\Yamt</code>	Yamamoto	Yamamoto
<code>\SYamt</code>	Yamamoto	Yamamoto
<code>\ForceFN\SYamt</code>	Isoroku	Isoroku

`\global` Both `\ReverseActive` and `\ReverseInactive` can be used either as a pair or singly within an explicitly local scope. Use `\global` to force a global effect.

`\AllCapsActive` In addition to the options for capitalizing (Section 2.1), `\AllCapsActive` and  
`\AllCapsInactive` `\AllCapsInactive` work for blocks of text. All override `\CapName`, which works  
`\CapName` once per name. These capitalize  $\langle SVN \rangle$  in the body text only. They also work with `\AKA` and friends. For caps in the text and index see Sections 2.5 and 2.10.3. We show “non-native” Eastern forms with a dagger (†) and the old syntax with a double dagger(‡).

	<code>\CapName</code> only	<code>\CapName\RevName</code>
<code>\Name*[Yoko]{Kanno}</code>	Yoko KANNO	KANNO Yoko†
<code>\Name*{Arai, Akino}</code>	ARAI Akino	Akino ARAI
<code>\Name*{Ishida}[Yoko]</code>	ISHIDA Yoko‡	Yoko ISHIDA‡
<code>\Name*{Yohko}</code>	YOHKO	YOHKO

`\global` Both `\AllCapsActive` and `\AllCapsInactive` can be used either as a pair or singly within an explicitly local scope. Use `\global` to force a global effect.

Back to Section 1.2

### 2.3.4 Particles, Medieval Names, and Ancient Names

cap rules English names with particles *de*, *de la*, *d'*, *von*, *van*, and *ten* often keep them with the last name, using varied capitalization.<sup>12</sup> *Le*, *La*, and *L'* always are capitalized unless preceded by *de*. See also Sections 1.3.2, 1.5, 2.2.3, and 2.5.

non-breaking We recommend inserting a tilde (active character for a non-breaking space)  
spaces or `\nobreakspace` between some particles and names to prevent bad breaks, sorting them with `\PretagName` (Section 2.6.3). Some particles look similar: *L'* (L+apostrophe) and *d'* (d+apostrophe) are two separate glyphs each. In contrast, *E* (L+caron) and *ḋ* (d+caron) are one Unicode glyph each (Section 2.11.2).

<sup>12</sup>According to [Mulvany, 165f.] and the *Chicago Manual of Style*.

`\CapThis` In English and modern Romance languages, e.g., [Hernando de Soto](#) shows that these particles go in the  $\langle SNN \rangle$  argument of `\Name: de Soto`. When the particle appears at the beginning of a sentence, one must capitalize it:

`\CapThis\Soto\ De Soto` was a famous Spanish explorer in North America.

**3.2** `\CapName` overrides the  $\langle SNN \rangle$  created by `\CapThis`. `\CapThis` should work with all of the Unicode characters available in the T1 encoding (its mechanism is explained in Section 2.11.2 and on page 78). For a broader set of Unicode characters, consider using `xelatex` and `lualatex`.

surname variants For another example, we mention poet [e.e. cummings](#). One can have formatted name caps and inflections, e.g.: “[Cummings's](#) motif of the goat-footed balloon man has underlying sexual themes that nevertheless have a childish facade.” The easiest way to do that is from Section 2.6.2:

```
\ExcludeName[e.e.]{cummings's}
...
\SubvertThis\CapThis\Name[e.e.]{cummings's}%
\IndexName[e.e.]{cummings} ..... Cummings's
```



One must use `\SubvertThis` only for the first use to avoid “[E.e. Cummings's](#)”; all name elements are capped with `\CapThis`. Using `\ExcludeName` keeps one from having to use `\SkipIndex` every time. With `nameauth` we can use both simple and complex solutions to name variation. See also Section 2.2.3.

Section 2.5 explains how to use `\CapThis` with alternate formatting when using macros in name arguments. Page 38 describes how automation lends itself to Continental (French, German, etc.) formats and grammatical inflections.

`\AccentCapThis` If one uses this package on a system that does not handle Unicode, one can use `\AccentCapThis` instead of `\CapThis` to handle active initial characters. Otherwise, one should not need to use `\AccentCapThis`.

**3.0**

## Examples

medieval names Medieval names present some interesting difficulties, often based on the expected standards of the context in which they are used:

```
1 \PretagName{Thomas, à~Kempis}{Thomas Akempis} % medieval
2 \PretagName[Thomas]{à~Kempis}{Akempis, Thomas} % Western
3 \IndexRef[Thomas]{à~Kempis}{Thomas à~Kempis} % xref
4 \ExcludeName{Thomas,\‘a~Kempis} % alternate form excluded
5 \begin{nameauth}
6 \< KempMed & & Thomas, à~Kempis & > % medieval
7 \< KempW & & Thomas & à~Kempis & > % Western
8 \end{nameauth}
```

**3.1** The medieval forms [Thomas à Kempis](#) and [Thomas](#) are indexed as “Thomas à Kempis.” The place name `\ForceFN\SKempMed “à Kempis”` (Latin for *von Kempen*) technically is not a Western surname. `À Kempis\CapThis\ForceFN\SKempMed` starts a sentence. `Thomas à Kempis \Name{Thomas,\‘a~Kempis}` is different. `À Kempis` is `\CapThis\SubvertThis\ForceFN\FName{Thomas,\‘a~Kempis}`. One should use `\PretagName` to sort the index entry (Section 2.6.3). We excluded this alternate form (Section 2.6.2).



Western forms like `\KempW`: **Thomas à Kempis** are very different from medieval forms and create different index entries. `\CapThis\KempW` gives “À Kempis” in the text and “à Kempis, Thomas” in the index.

Above, we created a cross-reference from the Western form to the medieval form, preventing page entries (Section 2.6.2). If we sorted the cross-reference using `\PretagName[Thomas]{à~Kempis}{a Kempis, Thomas}`, it would precede `aardvark`. We use `\PretagName[Thomas]{à~Kempis}{Akempis, Thomas}`, which sorts the cross-reference between `ajar` and `alkaline`. One should check a style manual for correct sorting (Section 2.6.3).

ancient names

Ancient contexts may or may not bind particles to surnames. The `<alternate>` argument, `\PretagName`, and `\TagName` address this (Sections 2.6.3, 2.6.4).

The next examples do not use the formatting conventions of this manual and sometimes hide details that are specific to this manual in order to keep things simple and reflect normal document usage. See the `dtx` source code for more information. First we use variants with `<alternate>`:<sup>13</sup>

```
1 \NameAddInfo{Demetrius, I}{ Soter}
2 \PretagName{Demetrius, I}{Demetrius I}
3 \TagName{Demetrius, I}{ Soter, king}
4 \begin{nameauth}
5   \< Dem & & Demetrius, I & >
6 \end{nameauth}
```

<code>\Dem[I Soter]</code>	Demetrius I Soter
<code>\LDem</code>	Demetrius I
<code>\Dem</code>	Demetrius

For a more automated approach, we can use “text tags” in the formatting macros (see Sections 2.7, 2.10.2).

```
7 \makeatletter
8 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{%
9   \begingroup%
10  \protected@edef\temp{\endgroup%
11    {\#1\noexpand\NameQueryInfo
12      [\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksa}]
13      {\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksb}}
14      [\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksc}]}%
15    }%
16  }%
17  \temp%
18 }
19 \makeatother
```

<code>\ForgetThis\Dem</code>	Demetrius I Soter
<code>\LDem</code>	Demetrius I
<code>\Dem</code>	Demetrius

Roman names

The Roman naming system does present some challenges. As long as we do not use `\CapThis`, we do not need alternate formatting (Section 2.5). Earlier we treated Marcus Tullius Cicero as a Western name. Now we handle Roman names more properly.

<sup>13</sup>Copies of these examples are in `examples.tex`, collocated with this manual.

We have a *praenomen*, a personal name. Then we have a *nomen*, a clan name. Finally, we would have a *cognomen*, a nickname, except it became hereditary to denote clan branches. Added to that are *agnomina*, affixed names.

popular works

Popular sources tend to treat the *cognomen* as we might a surname, with the indexed form:  $\langle cognomen \rangle \langle agnomen \rangle$ ,  $\langle praenomen \rangle \langle nomen \rangle$ .<sup>14</sup> We want all names in the index, so we define macros in  $\langle FNN \rangle$  and  $\langle SNN \rangle$  that expand one or two components: *praenomen* and *nomen*, *cognomen* and *agnomen*. We begin by defining a name with macros using `\noexpand` to prevent error:

```
1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< Scipio & \noexpand\SCIPi & \noexpand\SCIPii & >
3 \end{nameauth}
4 \PretagName[\noexpand\SCIPi]{\noexpand\SCIPii}{Scipio Africanus}
```

We define the flags and macros by which the name will change. The global state of `\NoGens` and `\NoAgnomen` determine the index form. The local scope in the formatting hooks allows changes that are reset when exiting that scope. The logic is inverted; false prints long, true prints short:

```
5 \newif\ifSkipGens
6 \newif\ifNoGens
7 \newif\ifSkipAgnomen
8 \newif\ifNoAgnomen
9 \newcommand*\SCIPi{\ifNoGens Publius\else
10   Publius Cornelius\fi}
11 \newcommand*\SCIPii{\ifNoAgnomen Scipio\else
12   Scipio Africanus\fi}
13 \newcommand*\ScipioOnly{\SkipAgnomentrue\Scipio}
14 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{%~A
15   {\ifSkipGens\NoGenstrue\fi\ifSkipAgnomen\NoAgnomentrue\fi#1%
16   \global\SkipGensfalse\global\SkipAgnomenfalse}
17 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]{%~A
18   {\ifSkipGens\NoGenstrue\fi\ifSkipAgnomen\NoAgnomentrue\fi#1%
19   \global\SkipGensfalse\global\SkipAgnomenfalse}
```

Publius Cornelius Scipio `\ScipioOnly` was born around 236 BC into the Scipio branch of the Cornelius clan, one of six large patrician clans. Scipio `\ScipioOnly` rose to military fame during the Second Punic War. Thereafter he was known as Scipio Africanus `\Scipio`.

An advantage of the popular format is that one can drop both *praenomen* and *nomen* automatically in subsequent uses. Yet in any case, one can define helper macros to change Boolean flags. The raw index entry is fairly lengthy by necessity, governed by the global state of the Boolean flags, and expanding to:

Scipio Africanus=Scipio Africanus, Publius Cornelius|hyperpage

scholarly works

The *Oxford Classical Dictionary* and other scholarly sources index under the *nomen*. That requires a similar approach, but it moves the *nomen* from  $\langle FNN \rangle$  to  $\langle SNN \rangle$ . Although we will not index the name, we will show how to set up Scipio Africanus to work in that alternate configuration.

<sup>14</sup>See Geiss, *Geschichte Griffbereit*; Kinder and Hilgemann, *dtv-Atlas zur Weltgeschichte*, 2 vols., 29th printing (1964; Munich: Deutscher Taschenbuch Verlag, 1993). For further resources see: <http://books.infotoday.com/books/Indexing-names.shtml>. See also [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roman\\_naming\\_conventions](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roman_naming_conventions).

We keep the Boolean flags as previously created. We redefine the name in the following manner:

```

1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< OScipio & Publius & \noexpand\CSA & >
3 \end{nameauth}
4 \PretagName[Publius]{\noexpand\CSA}{Cornelius Scipio Africanus}

```

We use a nested conditional in  $\langle SNN \rangle$ . The default still is to show all names so that they can be indexed that way. This time we decided to index under the popular form instead of the scholarly one, so we exclude the scholarly form:

```

1 \newcommand*\CSA{\ifNoGens
2   \ifNoAgnomen
3   Scipio\else
4   Scipio Africanus\fi
5   \else\ifNoAgnomen
6   Cornelius Scipio\else
7   Cornelius Scipio Africanus\fi\fi}
8 \ExcludeName[Publius]{\noexpand\CSA}

```

The scholarly form has a different name pattern, so it is not compatible with the popular version. Nevertheless, we show what the raw index entry of the scholarly form would be. We include some of the more meaningful forms of both versions:

```

\ShowPattern[Publius]{\noexpand\CSA}:
  Publius!\noexpand\CSA
\ShowIdxPageref[Publius]{\noexpand\CSA}:
  Cornelius Scipio Africanus=Cornelius Scipio Africanus, Publius|hyperpage

```

**First use:**

```

\OScipio:  Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus
\Scipio :  Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus

```

**Subsequent use:**

```

\OScipio:  Cornelius Scipio Africanus
\SkipGenstrue\OScipio:  Scipio Africanus
\Scipio :  Scipio Africanus

```

**Subsequent use, full, no *agnomen*:**

```

\SkipAgnomentrue\LOScipio:  Publius Cornelius Scipio
\SkipAgnomentrue\LSkipio :  Publius Cornelius Scipio

```

**Subsequent use, shortest forms:**

```

\SkipAgnomentrue\OScipio:  Cornelius Scipio
\SkipGenstrue\SkipAgnomentrue\OScipio:  Scipio
\SkipAgnomentrue\Scipio :  Scipio

```

**Subsequent use, personal name:**

```

\SOScipio:  Publius
\SkipGenstrue\SSkipio :  Publius

```

See Sections 1.6, 2.5, and 2.10 for more guidance on avoiding errors when using name arguments that contain macros.

Back to Section 1.2



## 2.4 Basic Formatting

Below are many of the forms and formats that names can have:

Full Forms, Front Matter	Short Forms, Front matter
<p><b>\NamesInactive</b></p> <p><b>First Use (Default)</b></p> <p>\Name George S. Patton Jr. Elizabeth I Yamamoto Isoroku</p> <p>\Name* George S. Patton Jr.</p> <p>\FName George S. Patton Jr.</p> <p><b>Later Use (* or \L&lt;macro&gt;)</b></p> <p>\Name* George S. Patton Jr. Elizabeth I Yamamoto Isoroku</p> <p><b>Long, with \DropAffix</b></p> <p>\DropAffix\LPat George S. Patton</p>	<p><b>\NamesInactive</b></p> <p><b>Later Use (Default)</b></p> <p>\Name Patton; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p>\FName, \S&lt;macro&gt; George S.; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p><b>Later Use (\ForceName)</b></p> <p>\Name Patton; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p>\FName, \S&lt;macro&gt; George S.; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p><b>Later Use (\ForceFN)</b></p> <p>\FName, \S&lt;macro&gt; Isoroku</p>

Full Forms, Main Matter	Short Forms, Main Matter
<p><b>\NamesActive</b></p> <p><b>First Use (Default)</b></p> <p>\Name George S. Patton Jr. Elizabeth I Yamamoto Isoroku</p> <p>\Name* George S. Patton Jr.</p> <p>\FName George S. Patton Jr.</p> <p><b>Later Use (* or \L&lt;macro&gt;)</b></p> <p>\Name* George S. Patton Jr. Elizabeth I Yamamoto Isoroku</p> <p><b>Long, with \DropAffix</b></p> <p>\DropAffix\LPat George S. Patton</p>	<p><b>\NamesActive</b></p> <p><b>Later Use (Default)</b></p> <p>\Name Patton; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p>\FName, \S&lt;macro&gt; George S.; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p><b>Later Use (\ForceName)</b></p> <p>\Name Patton; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p>\FName, \S&lt;macro&gt; George S.; Elizabeth Yamamoto</p> <p><b>Later Use (\ForceFN)</b></p> <p>\FName, \S&lt;macro&gt; Isoroku</p>



These formatting features of `nameauth` can work with name control macros (Section 2.8.1) in, for example, `beamer` overlays to define consistently the context and outcome of how names appear. There are two kinds of formatting at work that interact with each other:

1. **Syntactic Formatting:** Reversing and caps normally occur only in the body text, not the index. Yet macros in name arguments affect both text and index.
2. **Name Post-Processing:** Hook macros apply formatting only to the printed form of a name after parsing. See also Section 2.10.3.

`\NamesFormat` Independent “main-matter” and “front-matter” systems are used to format first and subsequent name uses. The main-matter system uses `\NamesFormat` to post-process first occurrences of names and `\MainNameHook` for subsequent uses. The front-matter system uses `\FrontNamesFormat` for first uses and `\FrontNameHook` for subsequent uses. The `alwaysformat` option causes only `\NamesFormat` and `\FrontNamesFormat` to be used (cf. Section 1.5).<sup>15</sup>

`\NamesActive` `\NamesInactive` and the `frontmatter` option make names use the front matter system. `\NamesActive` switches names to the main matter system.

`\global` These two macros can be used explicitly as a pair or singly within an explicit local scope. Use `\global` to force a global effect.

The two formatting systems are distinct, useful for front matter and main matter, text and footnotes, etc. We show this with different colors:

```
1 \colorlet{nared}{red!50!black}
2 \colorlet{nagreen}{green!35!black}
3 \colorlet{nablue}{blue!50!black}
4 \colorlet{nabrown}{brown!55!black}
5 \renewcommand*\FrontNamesFormat[1]{\color{nared}\sffamily #1}
6 \renewcommand*\FrontNameHook[1]{\color{nagreen}\sffamily #1}
7 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{\color{nablue}\sffamily #1}
8 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]{\color{nabrown}\sffamily #1}
```

Front-matter system:	<code>\NamesInactive</code>
<code>\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap}</code>	Rudolph Carnap
<code>\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap}</code>	Carnap
<code>\Name[Nicolas]{Malebranche}</code>	Nicolas Malebranche
<code>\Name[Nicolas]{Malebranche}</code>	Malebranche
Main-matter system:	<code>\NamesActive</code>
<code>\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap}</code>	Rudolph Carnap
<code>\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap}</code>	Carnap
<code>\Name[Nicolas]{Malebranche}</code>	Nicolas Malebranche
<code>\Name[Nicolas]{Malebranche}</code>	Malebranche

<sup>15</sup>The names of these macros may seem poorly conceived. When starting work on this package, this author was ignorant of the breadth of how names might be handled. Designed to meet the needs of a master’s thesis, this package has evolved to meet the needs of several published works. At one time, `\NamesFormat` was the only macro that did any formatting. The rest came later. A certain degree of cargo cult programming arose, to be corrected in the 3.0 series of `nameauth`.

`\ForceName` Use this prefix macro to force “first use” formatting for the next `\Name`, etc.

**3.1** This will not force a full name reference like `\ForgetThis`. One must use the `formatAKA` option when using this with `\AKA`, etc. We show `\ForceName` in Sections 2.8.1, 2.9, and 2.10.2.

`alwaysformat` Below we simulate the `alwaysformat` option by manipulating the package internals. Using first-use hooks will not force full name references. This option made more sense when `\NamesFormat` was the only formatting hook.

- Using `alwaysformat` in the front matter will produce: **Albert Einstein**, then **Einstein**; **Confucius**, then **Confucius**.
- Using `alwaysformat` in the main matter will produce: **Marcus Tullius Cicero**, then **Cicero**; **Elizabeth I**, then **Elizabeth**.

`hook caveats` The internal hook dispatcher calls the formatting hooks using the pattern `\bgroup<Hook>{#1}\egroup`. Thus one can use, e.g., `\itshape` in a local scope. One also can use macros that take one argument (cf. Section 2.10.3), e.g., `\renewcommand*\NamesFormat{\sffamily\color{nablue}\textit}` will create the forms **Albert Einstein** and **Einstein**.

`applied to footnotes` The independent systems or “species” of names fit independent text elements, like front matter or even footnotes. Names in the body text, such as **John Maynard Keynes**, also affect names in the footnotes.<sup>16</sup> In footnote 16 `\MainNameHook` is called instead of `\NamesFormat` because **Keynes** already had occurred above.

If we wanted to format names differently in the footnotes than in the body text, an easy way to do that is to use the front-matter system. For example:

```
1 \makeatletter
2 \let\@oldfntext\@makefntext
3 \long\def\@makefntext#1{\NamesInactive\@oldfntext{#1}\NamesActive}
4 \makeatother
```

When we create another footnote, we see very different results.<sup>17</sup> Footnote 17 shows a completely independent formatting. One also can synchronize the two systems with `\ForgetThis` and `\SubvertThis` (Section 2.8 and its subsections).

To finish this example, we change footnotes back to normal:

```
5 \makeatletter
6 \let\@makefntext\@oldfntext
7 \makeatother
```

Of course, one can force long and short forms as needed (Section 2.8.1). Yet the main point of `nameauth` is to do the complex work once, then use that in automated fashion for the rest of the document.

Back to Section 1.2

<sup>16</sup>We have **Keynes** from `\Name[John Maynard]{Keynes}` instead of **John Maynard Keynes**.

<sup>17</sup>We have **John Maynard Keynes** from `\Name[John Maynard]{Keynes}`, then **Keynes**.

## 2.5 Alternate Formatting

The formatting hooks only affect names in the body text. Continental formatting occurs in both the text and in the index. One needs to format those names with macros in the name arguments. The basic way formats names in both text and index. The advanced way allows changes in the text, but keeps the index consistent.

### 2.5.1 Basic Features

Section 1.6 showed us that changing a control sequence will change the index entry of a name, even if one cannot see differences on the page. Alternate formatting helps one avert spurious index entries.



Using, e.g., `\Name{\textsc{a Name, Problem}}` will halt L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X because the comma tries to break `\textsc` and its argument into two elements. We fix that with: `\Name{\textsc{a Name}, \textsc{Problem}}`. Yet `\CapThis` still needs alternate formatting, given that `\textsc` is robust (Section 2.5.2).<sup>18</sup>

`\AltFormatActive` Both the `altformat` option and `\AltFormatActive` enable and activate alternate formatting. Both cause `\CapThis` to work via `\AltCaps` instead of the normal way. `\AltFormatActive` countermands `\AltFormatActive*`.

- **Enabled** means that the alternate formatting mechanism inhibits the normal behavior of `\CapThis`.
- **Activated** means that `\textsc` and other alternate formatting macros (see below) format their arguments. When deactivated, they do not format their arguments.

3.1 At the start of this section we used `\AltFormatActive` to enable alternate formatting and “switch on” the alternate formatting macros. That is the basic set of conditions for the simple use of alternate formatting.

`\AltFormatActive*` The starred form `\AltFormatActive*` enables alternate formatting but deactivates the special formatting macros, preventing them from changing their arguments. It countermands both the `altformat` option and `\AltFormatActive`. It causes `\CapThis` only to work via `\AltCaps`.

`\AltFormatInactive` To both disable alternate formatting and deactivate the alternate formatting macros, use `\AltFormatInactive`. This reverts globally to standard formatting and the normal function of `\CapThis`.

	Enabled	Activated
<code>\AltFormatActive</code>	■	■
<code>\AltFormatActive*</code>	■	■
<code>\AltFormatInactive</code>	■	■

On the next page we describe the formatting macros that are built in to `nameauth` in order to use the basic features of alternate formatting and provide a foundation for the advanced features. One should use `\PretagName` (Section 2.6.3) to sort the related index entries for these names.

<sup>18</sup>Pre-version 3.1 methods of Continental formatting should work if one uses the `altformat` option or `\AltFormatActive` to protect against the default behavior of `\CapThis`.

`\textSC` Continental formatting can be as simple as using the short macro `\textSC`.  
`\textIT` Three other macros also implement alternate formatting. These macros make  
`\textBF` changes only when alternate formatting is active. We sort the index entry with  
`\textUC` `\PretagName` and demonstrate the formatting.

```
1 \PretagName[Greta]{\textSC{Garbo}}{Garbo, Greta}
2 \PretagName[Ada]{\textIT{Lovelace}}{Lovelace, Ada}
3 \PretagName[Charles]{\textBF{Babbage}}{Babbage, Charles}
4 \PretagName{\textUC{Tokugawa}, Ieyasu}{Tokugawa Ieyasu}

\Name[Greta]{\textSC{Garbo}} ..... Greta GARBO; GARBO
\Name[Ada]{\textIT{Lovelace}} ..... Ada Lovelace; Lovelace
\Name[Charles]{\textBF{Babbage}} ..... Charles Babbage; Babbage
\Name{\textUC{Tokugawa}, Ieyasu}... TOKUGAWA Ieyasu; TOKUGAWA
```

Since we switch to Latin Modern Sans in the formatting hooks, the switch to small caps in `GARBO` forces a substitution to Latin Modern Roman. This action varies with the font being used.

Using basic alternate formatting, these macros **always format their arguments** with the `altformat` option or `\AltFormatActive`. Likewise, they **never format their arguments** when `\AltFormatActive*` is used. To change the formatting of the name arguments, one must use the advanced features. Whenever a naming macro writes to the index, the formatting macros must be in the same Boolean state to avoid spurious index entries. The next section explains more.

As with normal formatting, `\CapName` interacts with alternate formatting only in the text. Thus `Greta GARBO` instead of `GARBO`. `\RevComma` likewise gives *Lovelace, Ada*. `\RevName` produces *Ieyasu TOKUGAWA*.

comma karma

A comma delimiter splits the mandatory macro argument into a root and an affix. To avoid errors, format the name and suffix separately.

```
1 \PretagName[John David]{\textSC{Rockefeller},\textSC{III}}
2   {Rockefeller, John David 3}
3 \PretagName{\textUC{Fukuyama}, Takeshi}{Fukuyama Takeshi}
4 \begin{nameauth}
5   \< JRIII & John David & \textSC{Rockefeller},\textSC{III} & >
6   \< Fukuyama & & \textUC{Fukuyama}, Takeshi & >
7   \< OFukuyama & & \textUC{Fukuyama} & Takeshi >
8 \end{nameauth}
```

From above we get `John David ROCKEFELLER III`, then `ROCKEFELLER`. For non-Western names, the new syntax and the older syntax produce the same control sequence that identifies names. Again we are careful to avoid putting the comma delimiter within a container macro.

<code>\Fukuyama</code>	<code>FUKUYAMA Takeshi</code>
<code>\OFukuyama</code>	<code>FUKUYAMA</code>
<code>\LOFukuyama</code>	<code>FUKUYAMA Takeshi</code>
<code>\Fukuyama</code>	<code>FUKUYAMA</code>

Only the new syntax allows one to use alternate names in the text (Section 2.2.2). For example, “`\LFukuyama[Sensei]` `FUKUYAMA` Sensei wrote *Nihon Fukuin Rūteru Kyōkai Shi* in 1954, after studying in the US in the 1930s.”

## 2.5.2 Advanced Features

A more complex version of alternate formatting allows us to make formatting and other changes in the text while keeping the index consistent. In order to do this, we will be using `\textSC`, `\textIT`, `\textBF`, and `\textUC` with `\noexpand` and special triggering macros. Below we briefly see the difference:

```
\Name[Martin]{\textSC{Luther}}           % basic alternate formatting
\Name[Martin]{\noexpand\textSC{Luther}} % advanced version
```

The reason for this approach is that indexing operations occur outside the formatting hooks, never within the hooks, and `\noexpand` keeps the two separate.

Using `\noexpand` is key to consistent index entries.

`\AltCaps`      `\CapThis` causes `\AltCaps` to cap its argument only in a formatting hook. It is enabled whenever alternate formatting is enabled. `\AltCaps` works independently of `\AltOn` and `\AltOff`:

`\noexpand\AltCaps{<Arg>}`

In the example below we redefine `\MainNameHook` to suppress formatting:

```
1 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook%
2   {\color{nabrown}\sffamily\AltOff}% we match the manual
3
4 \IndexInactive
5 What's in a \Name{\noexpand\AltCaps{a} Name}?
6 \CapThis\Name{\noexpand\AltCaps{a} Name} smells not,
7 but a rose does. We avoid \Name{
8   \noexpand\textSC{\noexpand\AltCaps{a} Name},
9   \noexpand\textSC{Problem}}.
10 \CapThis\Name*{
11   \noexpand\textSC{\noexpand\AltCaps{a} Name},
12   \noexpand\textSC{Problem}} will not occur,
13   even if it smells like a rose.
```

What's in a **a Name**? **A Name** smells not, but a rose does. We avoid **A NAME PROBLEM**. **A Name Problem** will not occur, even if it smells like a rose.

`\AltOff`      Like a manual automobile clutch and gearbox, `\AltOff` deactivates `\textSC`, `\textBF`, `\textIT`, and `\textUC` only in a formatting hook.

`\AltOn`      `\AltOn` activates `\textSC`, `\textBF`, `\textIT`, and `\textUC` only in a formatting hook. To summarize:

- `\AltFormatActive` and `\AltFormatActive*` set global states.
- `\AltFormatActive` causes formatting in the text and index, as well as forcing the use of `\AltCaps`.
- With `\AltFormatActive*` inhibits formatting, but still requires one to use `\AltCaps`.
- `\AltOn` and `\AltOff` change local state only in the formatting hooks.
- The user adds `\AltOn` and `\AltOff` to the hooks as needed.
- The actual formatting happens via macros in the name arguments.

Keeping the `\MainNameHook` example above, we have:

```
1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< Luth & Martin & \noexpand\textSC{Luther} & >
3 \end{nameauth}
4 \PretagName[Martin]{\noexpand\textSC{Luther}}{Luther, Martin}
```

We first mention `\Luth Martin LUTHER`. Then again, `\Luth Luther`. Medieval Italian differs from modern Italian with respect to particles. Below the index entry should be “MEDICI, Catherine de’” instead of “de MEDICI, Catherine”:

```
1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< Cath & Catherine \noexpand\AltCaps{d}e'
3       & \noexpand\textSC{Medici} & >
4 \end{nameauth}
5 \PretagName[Catherine \noexpand\AltCaps{d}e']
6       {\noexpand\textSC{Medici}}{Medici, Catherine de}
```

This gives us `Catherine de' MEDICI` and `Medici`. To get `De' MEDICI` and `De' Medici` in the text, use `\CapThis\LCath[\noexpand\AltCaps{d}e']`.

name inflections



We can use alternate formatting for grammatical inflections (cf. Section 2.10.3). We tell the same set of lies that we did on page 29. `\DoGenttrue` occurs only in the formatting hook, thereby keeping the index entries consistent:<sup>19</sup>

```
1 \newif\ifGenitive
2 \newif\ifDoGen
3 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]
4   {\ifGenitive\DoGenttrue\fi#1\global\Genitivefalse}
5 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]
6   {\ifGenitive\DoGenttrue\fi\AltOff#1\global\Genitivefalse}
7 \begin{nameauth}
8   \< Jeff & Thomas & \noexpand\JEFF & >
9 \end{nameauth}
10 \PretagName[Thomas]{\noexpand\JEFF}{Jefferson, Thomas}
11 \TagName[Thomas]{\noexpand\JEFF}{, pres.|hyperpage}
12 \newcommand\JEFF{\ifDoGen\textSC{Jefferson's}\else
13   \textSC{Jefferson}\fi}
14
15 Consider \Genitivetrue\Jeff\ legacy. More on \Jeff\ later.
16 \Genitivetrue\Jeff\ reputation has declined in recent decades.
```

Consider Thomas JEFFERSON’s legacy. More on Jefferson later. Jefferson’s reputation has declined in recent decades.

For highly inflected languages, this would require two Boolean flags per case and nested conditional statements. Now we resume normal formatting with `\AltFormatInactive` and we do not use the names in this section outside of it.<sup>20</sup>

Back to Section 1.2

<sup>19</sup>A copy of this example is in `examples.tex`, collocated with this manual.

<sup>20</sup>In a `dtx` file it is best to put the `nameauth` environment, `\PretagName`, and `\TagName` macros in the driver section, especially when names contain macros.

## 2.6 Indexing Macros

### 2.6.1 Index Entries and Control

`\IndexName` Both package users and the naming macros themselves use this macro to create index entries. It prints nothing in the body text:


`\IndexName[⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]`

If `⟨FNN⟩` is present, it ignores `⟨Alternate⟩` for Western and “native” Eastern name forms. If `⟨FNN⟩` is absent, `\IndexName` may use the current or obsolete non-Western syntax (Section 1.4). Indexing follows [Mulvany, 152–82].

If `\IndexInactive` or the `noindex` option are used, this macro does nothing until `\IndexActive` appears. Additionally, it will not create index entries for cross-references made by `\IndexRef` and `\AKA`. It will not index names excluded by `\ExcludeName`. This provides some error protection for professional indexing.

`\IndexName` and `\IndexRef` call `\@nameauth@Index`, a macro that assembles an index entry from the sort tag (Section 2.6.2), name arguments, and index tag (Section 2.6.4). Different standards exist for index entries and cross-references. Check with your publisher, style guide, and docs for `xindy` and `makeindex`.


`\IndexActive` The `noindex` option deactivates the indexing function of this package until  
`\IndexInactive` `\IndexActive` enables indexing. Another macro, `\IndexInactive`, will deactivate indexing again. These can be used throughout the document. **`\IndexInactive` suppresses index sorting and tagging macros.** Compare the use of macros `\ExcludeName` and `\IncludeName` (Section 2.6.2).

`\IndexProtect` Both the core name engine `\@nameauth@Name` and `\AKA` have locks that prevent  
**3.3** them from being re-entrant. This protects the text. Usually, one does not put  
 naming macros in the index. Just in case, now one can use `\IndexProtect` right before `\printindex` to prevent `nameauth` macros from producing any output.

This example shows the difference between the effects of the older and newer approaches. We use the tag § in this manual’s index, but not below:

Macro	Text	.ind file	Index
no protection			
<code>\Name{foo\Name{bar}}</code>	foo	<code>\item foo\Name {bar}</code>	foo <b>bar</b>
(next iteration adds) →		<code>\item bar</code>	bar
<code>\IndexProtect</code>			
<code>\Name{foo\Name{bar}}</code>	foo	<code>\item foo\Name {bar}</code>	foo
(no further output results)			

`\global` `\IndexActive` and `\IndexInactive` can be used as a pair or singly within a group. These macros override any prefix macros. `\IndexProtect` also can be used in a local scope. Use `\global` with these macros to force a global effect.

`\SkipIndex` The prefix macro `\SkipIndex` will suppress indexing for just one instance of  
**3.1** a naming or cross-referencing macro. It will not alter name forms or formatting.  
 For example, `\SkipIndex\Name[Monty]{Python}` produces **Monty Python** in the text with no index entry. The same thing again yields **Python**. Since prefix macros are meant for macros that print a name, both `\IndexName` and `\IndexRef` ignore `\SkipIndex` and allow the Boolean flags set by the prefix macros, to “pass through” to the next naming macro. That may seem counter-intuitive.



**\JustIndex** This prefix macro makes `\Name`, `\Name*`, `\Fname`, and the shorthands act like a one-time call to `\IndexName`. Flags set by the prefix macros “pass through” to the next naming macro except these three: `\@nameauth@JustIndexfalse` (obviously), but also `\@nameauth@FullNamefalse` and `\@nameauth@FirstNamefalse`.



**3.3**

- Both `\AKA` and `\PName` ignore and reset the flag set by `\JustIndex`.
- `\SkipIndex \JustIndex \Name{A} \Name{B}` is just like `\JustIndex \Name{A} \SkipIndex \Name{B}`. See the table on page 20.
- Version 3.3 eliminates the undocumented behavior that used to occur when not using, e.g., `\JustIndex\Wash`. Now any version will do:
 

<code>\JustIndex\LWash \Wash</code>	old: <i>George Washington</i>	new: <i>Washington</i>
<code>\JustIndex\SWash \Wash</code>	old: <i>George</i>	new: <i>Washington</i>
- The `oldpass` option restores the old behavior. Cf. Section 2.10.4.

Back to Section 1.2

## 2.6.2 Cross-References

**\IndexRef** This macro emerged from the macros in Section 2.9. By default, `\IndexRef` creates a *see* reference from the name defined by its first three arguments to the target in its final argument:

**3.0**

`\IndexRef [⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]{⟨reference target⟩}`

The name parsing is like `\IndexName`, except that the final argument is neither parsed nor checked if a target entry exists. For example, to cross-reference “Sun King” with *Louis XIV* use: `\IndexRef{Sun King}{Louis XIV}`.



When `\IndexRef` calls `\@nameauth@Index`, a preexisting tag of the form *⟨some text⟩|⟨some macro⟩* is reduced to *⟨some text⟩*. One cannot tag an extant cross-reference, but one can tag a name, then later create a *see also* reference. For related warnings activated by the `verbose` option, see Section 1.6.

Next we look at variant names and cross-references. Some can be handled with the *⟨Alternate⟩* argument. Others require more work to implement (Section 2.2.3).

- Variant names potentially can have page numbers in index entries. Cross-references cannot have page numbers.
- `\DropAffix\ForgetThis\Name[J.E.]{Carter, Jr.}[Jimmy]` gives a variant name: *Jimmy Carter* indexed under “Carter, J.E., Jr.”
- `\IndexRef[Jimmy]{Carter}{Carter, J.E., Jr.}` makes an xref but prints nothing. We need only create this cross-reference once.
- By contrast, `\AKA` automatically formats the cross-reference name in the text and in the index.
- Yet `\AKA` has limited formatting. Instead, after creating the xref with `\IndexRef`, one can use `\SubvertThis\Name*[Jimmy]{Carter} Jimmy Carter` with full formatting, but without creating any page entries.
- `\SubvertThis` syncs the variant with the canonical form `\DropAffix \Name*[J.E.]{Carter, Jr.}[Jimmy] Jimmy Carter`. Otherwise, they would act as different names. See also Section 2.8.2.



- If we use `\Name[Jimmy]{Carter}` **Carter** we have to index this alternate name with the canonical one: `\IndexName[J.E.]{Carter, Jr.}`

`\SeeAlso` Put `\SeeAlso` before `\IndexRef`, `\AKA`, and `\PName` to make a *see also* reference  
**3.0** for a name that has appeared already in the index. Yet one should mind the caveats:

- If `\SeeAlso\IndexRef{Bar}{Foo}` occurs on page 10, `\Name{Bar}` will not create index entries thereafter. A *see also* ref follows all page refs.
- If `\SeeAlso\IndexRef{Bar}{Foo}` occurs on page 10, `\Name{Foo}` will create index entries thereafter because it is the target of “Bar.”
- If `\Name{Baz}` occurs on page 12 and `\IndexRef{Baz}{Meschugge}` on page 16, no xref will be created. A *see* reference has no page refs.

`\ExcludeName` This macro prevents a name from being used as either an index entry or as an  
**3.0** index cross-reference. It will not exclude extant cross-references:

`\ExcludeName[⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]`

`\IndexRef` works best if one needs a cross-reference from a variant to the canonical name. If no cross-reference is needed, then `\ExcludeName` is used. Unlike `\IndexInactive` and `\IndexActive`, this macro works only on a per-name basis. Below we keep specific names and cross-references out of the index:

```

1 \ExcludeName[Kris]{Kringle}
2 \ExcludeName[Santa]{Claus}
3 \ExcludeName{Grinch}
4 \Name[Kris]{Kringle}           Kris Kringle
5 \Name[Kris]{Kringle}           Kringle
6 \AKA[Kris]{Kringle}[Santa]{Claus} Santa Claus

```

For more examples of using `\ExcludeName` to handle variants, see Sections 2.2.3 and 2.3.4, among others. We will check on the **Grinch** later.

`\IncludeName` For those who might need to break the indexing rules set by `nameauth`, these  
`\IncludeName*` two macros get the job done. They remove the protections used for exclusion and  
**3.0** cross-referencing. These macros have the same syntax as `\ExcludeName`:

`\IncludeName [⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]`  
`\IncludeName* [⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]`

`\IncludeName` only removes an excluded reference created by `\ExcludeName` while `\IncludeName*` completely un-protects a cross-reference. Thereafter, one may create page entries for it like a name.

For example, we used `\ExcludeName{Attila, the Hun}` at the end of Section 1.3.2. Using `\IfAKA{Attila, the Hun}{⟨an xref⟩}{⟨no xref⟩}{⟨excluded⟩}` tells us that he is *⟨excluded⟩* (cf. Section 2.8.2).

Once we use `\IncludeName{Attila, the Hun}`, using `\LAttila Attila the Hun` will create a name and an index entry on this page. `\IfAKA` now tells us that he is *⟨no xref⟩*. We again have a name that can be indexed.

Cross-references get more protection. `\IfAKA[Jay]{Rockefeller}` (a reference from Section 1.3.2) tells us that he is *⟨an xref⟩*. If we follow the previous example and use `\IncludeName[Jay]{Rockefeller}` he still is *⟨an xref⟩*. After using `\IncludeName*[Jay]{Rockefeller}` he finally becomes *⟨no xref⟩*, removing all protection from that cross-reference.

## Advanced Cross-Referencing

combining xrefs    `\IndexRef` will not merge multiple cross-references. One must manually merge cross-references: `\IndexRef{Bar}{Baz; Foo}` makes the index entry “Bar, *see* Baz; Foo.” The preferred standard (in the humanities) suggests that one avoid something like `\IndexRef{Bar}{Baz} \IndexRef{Bar}{Foo}`.

one xref            There is a special case where one cross-reference can point to multiple targets,  
many targets        such as demonstrated in the example below:

```
1 \PretagName{\textit{Snellius}}{Snellius}
2 \IndexRef{\textit{Snellius}}{Snel van Royen, R.; Snel van Royen, W.}
3
4 Both \Name[W.]{Snel van Royen}[Willebrord] and
5 his son \Name[R.]{Snel van Royen}[Rudolph] were known
6 by the Latin moniker \Name{\textit{Snellius}}.
```

Both [Willebrord Snel van Royen](#) and his son [Rudolph Snel van Royen](#) were known by the Latin moniker [Snellius](#).

location matters    `\IndexRef` prevents page numbers in cross-references, so one must plan how to set up complex cross-references. Above, `\Name{\textit{Snellius}}` produces no index entry because `\IndexRef` comes first.

Multiple            Below, two names are indexed with page numbers. They have *see also* cross-  
connections        references to each other. One of those names also has a *see* reference to it:

- We use the canonical name to set up page references:

`\Name{Maimonides} . . . . .` [Maimonides](#)

- [Maimonides](#) has two other names, one more used than the other. We set up his least-used name as the *see* reference:

`\IndexRef{Moses, ben-Maimon}{Maimonides}`  
`\Name{Moses, ben-Maimon} . . . . .` [Moses ben-Maimon](#)

- We now have a main name with a page entry and a “*see* reference” to that name. [Moses ben-Maimon](#) has no page entries because we made the xref before we started to use the name.
- Before creating *see also* cross-references, we use the other alternate name so that all the page entries precede the cross-references:

`\Name{Rambam} . . . . .` [Rambam](#)

- All *see also* references must come after all page references. For example, one could put both of these macros at the end of the document:

`\SeeAlso\IndexRef{Maimonides}{Rambam}`  
`\SeeAlso\IndexRef{Rambam}{Maimonides}`

*This space is intentionally left blank.*

## Continental Format Reference Work

Let us create a macro for entries in a reference work using the basic form of Continental formatting from Section 2.5.1. We enable alternate formatting, set up tags, and define an article with head-words:

```
1 \AltFormatActive
2 \PretagName[Greta]{\textSC{Garbo}}{Garbo, Greta}
3 \PretagName[Heinz]{\textSC{Rühmann}}{Ruehmann, Heinz}
4 \PretagName[Heinrich Wilhelm]{\textSC{Rühmann}}%
5   {Ruehmann, Heinrich Wilhelm}
6
7 \newcommand{\RefArticle}[4]{%
8   \def\check{#2}%
9   \ifx\check\empty
10     \noindent\ForgetThis#1\ {#4}
11   \else
12     \noindent\ForceName#1\ ‘\ForceName#2’
13     \ForceName#3\ {#4}
14   \fi
15 }
```

`\RefArticle` either formats the name from the first argument and appends the fourth argument, ignoring the others if the second is empty, or it formats the first three arguments and appends the fourth. We determine what those arguments mean by including specific naming macros.

```
16 \RefArticle%
17   {\Name[Greta]{\textSC{Garbo}}}%
18   {}{}%
19   {(18 September 1905\,--\,15 April 1990) was a Swedish
20     film actress during the 1920s and 1930s.}
21
22 \RefArticle%
23   {%
24     \IndexRef[Heinrich Wilhelm]{\textSC{Rühmann}}%
25     {\textSC{Rühmann}, Heinz}%
26     \SubvertThis\FName[Heinrich Wilhelm]{\textSC{Rühmann}}%
27   }%
28   {\SubvertThis\FName[Heinz]{\textSC{Rühmann}}}%
29   {\Name[Heinz]{\textSC{Rühmann}}}%
30   {(7 March 1902\,--\,3 October 1994) was a German actor
31     in over 100 films.}
32
33 \AltFormatInactive
```

**Greta GARBO** (18 September 1905–15 April 1990) was a Swedish film actress during the 1920s and 1930s.

**Heinrich Wilhelm “Heinz” RÜHMANN** (7 March 1902–3 October 1994) was a German actor in over 100 films.

Back to Section 1.2

### 2.6.3 Index Sorting

`\IndexActual` The general practice for sorting with `makeindex -s` involves creating your own `.ist` file (pages 659–65 in *The LaTeX Companion*). The following form works with both `makeindex` and `texindy`: `\index{<sort key>@<actual>}`. By default, the “actual” character is `@`. If one needs to change the “actual” character, such as when using `gind.ist` with `.dtx` files, one would put `\IndexActual{=}` in the preamble (or driver section) before using `\PretagName`.

`\PretagName` The `nameauth` package enables automatic index sorting using a “pretag” (see Section 1.5). `\PretagName` creates a sort key terminated with the “actual” character. Do not put the “actual” character in the “pretag”:

2.0

`\PretagName[<FNN>]{<SNN, Affix>}[<Alternate>]{<tag>}`

One need only “pretag” names once in the preamble. Thereafter, they will be sorted automatically. For example:

```
1 \PretagName[Jan]{Łukasiewicz}{Łukasiewicz, Jan}
2 \PretagName{Æthelred, II}{Aethelred 2}
3 \PretagName[W.E.B.]{Du~Bois}{Dubois, W.E.B.}
```

Every reference to [Jan Łukasiewicz](#), [Æthelred II](#), and [W.E.B. Du Bois](#) is automatically tagged and sorted. One also must “pretag” names that contain spaces, macros, active characters, control spaces, non-breaking spaces, and anything that is not basic ASCII. That can differ when using `xindy` and Unicode-based  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

particles and  
languages

For example, the sort tag `de Soto` precedes `deal` due to the space: `de_`. The sort tag `Desoto` falls between `derp` and `determinism`. German `ä ö ü ß` map to English `ae oe ue ss`. Yet Norwegian `æ ø å` follow `z` in that order. Check a style guide regarding collating sequences, spaces, and sorting. This is where using `xindy` can be very helpful. See also Section 2.3.4.

sub-entries

One can sort names by creating sub-entries, which depends on the index style and formatting files: `\PretagName[Some]{Name}{<category>!Name, Some}`. See the documentation for `xindy` and `makeindex`.

Below we show how `\PretagName` helps one to avoid manually sorting cross-references (cf. Section 2.3.4):

```
1 \PretagName{\textit{Doctor angelicus}}{Doctor angelicus}
2 \IndexRef{\textit{Doctor angelicus}}{Thomas, Aquinas}
3
4 Perhaps the greatest medieval theologian was
5 \Name{Thomas, Aquinas}, later known as
6 \Name{\textit{Doctor angelicus}}.
```

Perhaps the greatest medieval theologian was [Thomas Aquinas](#), later known as [Doctor angelicus](#).

`\PretagName` differs from the other tagging macros because its function is sorting entries, not appending information to entries:

- You can “pretag” any name and any cross-reference.
- You can “tag” and “untag” only page-reference names, not xrefs, but you can turn a page-reference name into a *see also* xref.
- You can undo a “tag” but you cannot undo a “pretag.”

## Debugging Problems with Sorting

If an entry is incorrect in the index, check the following:

- Are there any active characters, internal spaces, or control sequences in the name arguments? Use `\PretagName`.
- Is alternate formatting used consistently? Are any names used within sections of alternate formatting ever used outside of them?
- Are macros in the name arguments that can expand differently under different conditions preceded by `\noexpand`?

Since 2018 changes in the way that Unicode characters are handled in `pdflatex` and `latex` have made indexing simpler and more intuitive, e.g.

pre-2018	text	index	post-2018	text	index	
	ä	→	<code>\IeC_{\a}</code>	ä	→	ä
	æ	→	<code>\IeC_{\ae}</code>	æ	→	æ

One can test for this change and take different approaches with:

```
\IfFileExists{utf8-2018.def}{\yes}{\no}
```

One also should look at the entries in the `.idx` or `.ind` files to see how the name arguments and other index entry components are turned into index entries. If there are entries that do not work, one can find the corresponding page numbers in order to identify the problem.



Extra spaces are significant when sorting index entries, yet usually are not significant in the body text. Hidden spaces, tokens, macros, and control sequences create unique index entries that look similar, yet expand and sort differently. Some macros can add spaces to index entries. For example, index tags in this manual that include `\dag` show up as `\dag_` in the index (two trailing spaces). Below we show a general form of macro that adds extra spaces to index entries:

```
1 \newcommand\Idx[1]{%
2   \protected@edef\arg{#1}%
3   \index{\arg}}
```

<code>\Idx{\textsc{football}}</code>	→	<code>\indexentry{\textsc_ {football}}{\page}</code>
<code>\index{\textsc{football}}</code>	→	<code>\indexentry{\textsc{football}}{\page}</code>

Back to Section [1.2](#)

### 2.6.4 Index Tags

`\TagName` This macro creates a tag appended to all index entries for a corresponding `\Name`.  
`\UntagName` The tag persists until one changes it with `\TagName` or destroys it with `\UntagName`.  
 Tags can include life dates, regnal dates, and other information. Both `\TagName` and `\UntagName` handle their arguments like `\IndexName`:

```
\TagName[⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]{⟨tag⟩}
\UntagName[⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]
```

All the indexing macros are keyed to the name patterns. `\PretagName` generates the leading sort key. `\TagName` and `\UntagName` affect the trailing content:

	<code>\PretagName</code>	<code>\IndexName</code>	
<code>\index{Aethelred 20Æthelred II, king}</code>			
			<code>\TagName</code>
			<code>\UntagName</code>

scholarly helps Tags created by `\TagName` can be helpful in the indexes of academic texts by adding dates, titles, etc. `\TagName` causes the `nameauth` indexing macros to append “`,Lpope`” to the index entries for the popes below:

```

1 \TagName{Leo, I}{, pope}
2 \TagName{Gregory, I}{, pope}
3 Pope \Name{Leo, I} was known as \AKA{Leo, I}{Leo, the Great}.\
4 Pope \Name{Gregory, I} was known as \Name{Gregory, I}
5 ‘‘\ForceFN\AKA*{Gregory, I}{Gregory, the Great}.’’

```

Pope **Leo I** was known as **Leo the Great**.  
Pope **Gregory I** was known as **Gregory “the Great.”**

`\TagName` works with all names, but not with cross-references from `\IndexRef`, `\AKA`, etc. (cf. Sections 2.6.2, 2.9). Tags also can be daggers, asterisks, and so on. For example, all fictional names in the index of this manual are tagged with §. One must add any desired spaces to the start of the tag.

same name game We can format and index one name as two different people with `\TagName` and `\ForgetThis` (Section 2.8.1). The index tags group together their respective entries. In a normal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document one would write, e.g.:

```

1 \TagName[E.]{Humperdinck}{ (composer)}
2 This refers to the classical composer:
3 \Name[E.]{Humperdinck}[Engelbert].
4
5 \TagName[E.]{Humperdinck}{ (singer)}
6 This refers to the pop singer from the 60s and 70s:
7 \ForgetThis\Name[E.]{Humperdinck}[Engelbert].

```

This refers to the classical composer: **Engelbert Humperdinck**.  
This refers to the pop singer from the 60s and 70s: **Engelbert Humperdinck**.

special tags One can use `\TagName` to create “special” index entries for names with the general form `\TagName{⟨Name⟩}{|⟨Macro⟩}`, when `\def\⟨Macro⟩#1{#1}` exists.

### 3.3 These tags are compatible with hyperref.<sup>21</sup>

For example, using the `ltxdoc` class with `hydoc` does not create hyperlinked page entries with `nameauth`. This behavior does not affect normal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X documents that use `nameauth` and `hyperref`. When creating this manual, we had to tag every name with: `\TagName{⟨Name⟩}{|hyperpage}` in the driver section of the `dtx` file.

In the “commented” package documentation part of a `dtx` file, the vertical bar is active. This adds an extra layer of complexity. Index tags in the documentation part must use the form: `\TagName{⟨Name⟩}{\string|hyperpage}`.

<sup>21</sup>Before version 3.3 these special tags did not work with `hyperref`. The fix was inspired by the answer of **Heiko Oberdiek** in: <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/201720/index-produces-invalid-idx-entry-with-manual-style-commaparse-hyperref>

Below we use the conventions of this manual to create a special tag:

```
1 \newcommand\Orphan[2]{#1(\hyperpage{#2})}
2 \TagName[Lost]{Name}{\,\S\Orphan{perdit}}
3 \Name[Lost]{Name}
```

Lost Name

```
idx file: \indexentry{Name, Lost\,\S\Orphan{perdit}}{\langle page\rangle}
ind file: \item Name, Lost\,\S\pfill\Orphan{perdit}{\langle page\rangle}
```

The `microtype` package and its `Spacing` environment may be the best solution to fix index entries and sub-entries that break badly across columns or pages. Suppose, however, that we wanted to insert manual breaks into an index at will, preferably after the final page reference in an entry.

We cannot just insert something like `\newpage`. In order to accomplish our goal, we need a helper macro that can take an argument. Below we use `\newpage`, but if we instead make use of the `multicol` or `idxlayout` packages we can replace that with `\columnbreak`. Two macros illustrate a similar concept:

```
1 \newcommand*\EndBreak[1]{#1\newpage}
2 \makeatletter
3 \newcommand*\MidBreak[1]{#1\newpage\@gobble}
4 \makeatother
```

Putting a break into the middle of an index entry is quite sketchy and probably should be avoided, but it can be done by using `\@gobble` to eat the comma after the break. Instead, breaking after the entry is preferable. That entry is a list of page numbers corresponding to several pages:

```
(page 10) \Name{Some, Name}
...
(page 15) \Name{Some, Name}
...
(page 18) \TagName{Some, Name\EndBreak}%
         \Name{Some, Name}
```

If all instances of `\Name{Some, Name}` on page 18 have the same tag, there will be no duplicate page entries, `hyperref` will work, and the index will break after:

```
Some Name ... 10, 15, 18
```

manual entries

We can use the same macros in manual index entries. We may need to look at the `idx` or `ind` files to craft matching entries on the page that corresponds to the placement of the break:<sup>22</sup>

```
(page 18) \SkipIndex\Name{Some, Name}%
         \index{Some Name\EndBreak}
```

Back to Section 1.2

---

<sup>22</sup>Results vary, depending on what distribution of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is being used and how old it is. As we saw in the previous section, any name with active characters needs to be handled differently before 2018 than after 2018.



## 2.7 “Text Tags”

`\NameAddInfo` Unlike index tags, “text tags” are not printed automatically with every name managed by `nameauth`. Sections 2.8.2 and 2.10.2 have more examples. The macro is `\long`, allowing for some complexity in the `<tag>` argument:

```
\NameAddInfo[<FNN>]{<SNN, Affix>}[<Alternate>]{<tag>}
```

For example, `\NameAddInfo[George]{Washington}{(1732--99)}` makes a text tag but does not print whenever `\Wash` “Washington” is used.

`\NameQueryInfo` To print the text tag macro associated with a name, we use `\NameQueryInfo`, which calls the appropriate macro in the name info data set:

```
\NameQueryInfo[<FNN>]{<SNN, Affix>}[<Alternate>]
```

`\NameQueryInfo[George]{Washington}` expands to (1732–99). One can insert a space at its start or use signs like asterisks, daggers, and even footnotes, such as one for [Schuyler Colfax](#).<sup>23</sup> Below is the source for footnote 23:

```
1 \NameAddInfo[Ulysses S.]{Grant}{(president from 1869 to 1877)}%
2 \NameAddInfo[Schuyler]{Colfax}{\footnote{He was the seventeenth
3 US vice-president, holding office during the first term (1869--73)
4 of \Name[Ulysses S.]{Grant} \NameQueryInfo[Ulysses S.]{Grant}.}}
... \Name[Schuyler]{Colfax}. \NameQueryInfo[Schuyler]{Colfax}
```



Since one can nest “text tags” or have them call each other, one can build complex relations. Yet one must protect against a stack overflow by using Boolean flags to stop the recursion:

```
1 \newif\ifA
2 \newif\ifB
3 \NameAddInfo{A}{%
4   \Atrue A \ifB Stop \else \NameQueryInfo{B} \fi \Afalse}
5 \NameAddInfo{B}{%
6   \Btrue B \ifA Stop \else \NameQueryInfo{A} \fi \Bfalse}

\NameQueryInfo{A} → A B Stop
\NameQueryInfo{B} → B A Stop
```

`\NameClearInfo` `\NameAddInfo` will replace one text tag with another text tag, but it does not delete a text tag. That is the role of `\NameClearInfo`. The syntax is:

```
\NameClearInfo[<FNN>]{<SNN, Affix>}[<Alternate>]
```

After using `\NameClearInfo[George]{Washington}`, the next attempt to query the tag `\NameQueryInfo[George]{Washington}` will produce nothing.<sup>24</sup>

Back to Section 1.2

<sup>23</sup>He was the seventeenth US vice-president, holding office during the first term (1869–73) of [Ulysses S. Grant](#) (president from 1869 to 1877).

<sup>24</sup>Had any information from a text tag been present, it would have appeared between “nothing” and the full stop.



## 2.8 Name Decisions

The macros in this section force and detect name states. Below we keep names consistent with `beamer` overlays using some of the macros explained in this section. Otherwise, name forms will change as one advances the slides:<sup>25</sup>

```
1 \documentclass{beamer}
2 \usepackage{nameauth}
3 \mode<presentation>
4 \beamerdefaultoverlayspecification{<+>}
5
6 \begin{document}
7
8 \begin{frame}{Move Text Without Retyping Names}
9   \begin{itemize}\footnotesize
10    \item<1-> Original\ForgetName[George]{Washington}%
11              \ForgetName[George]{Washington's}\\
12              \Name[Martin]{Van Buren} changes
13              after the first overlay.
14   \begin{enumerate}
15    \item<2-> \IfMainName[George]{Washington's}{He}%
16              {\Name[George]{Washington}}
17              became the first president
18              of the United States.
19    \item<3-> \IfMainName[George]{Washington}{His}%
20              {\SkipIndex\Name*[George]{Washington's}}
21              military successes during the Seven Years War
22              readied him to command the army
23              of the Continental Congress.
24   \end{enumerate}
25   \item<1-> Reordered\ForgetName[George]{Washington}%
26              \ForgetName[George]{Washington's}\\
27              \ForgetThis\Name[Ulysses S.]{Grant}
28              does not change.
29   \begin{enumerate}
30    \item<3-> \IfMainName[George]{Washington}{His}%
31              {\SkipIndex\Name*[George]{Washington's}}
32              military successes during the Seven Years War
33              readied him to command the army
34              of the Continental Congress.
35    \item<2-> \IfMainName[George]{Washington's}{He}%
36              {\Name[George]{Washington}}
37              became the first president
38              of the United States.
39   \end{enumerate}
40   \end{itemize}
41 \end{frame}
42
43 \end{document}
```

The overlays, numbered progressively from one to three, begin by deleting name control sequence patterns. Uncontrolled names will change. Name conditionals ensure specific, context-dependent forms based on what name has appeared. These conditionals allow the text to be order-independent.

---

<sup>25</sup>A copy of this example is in `examples.tex`, collocated with this manual.

## 2.8.1 Making Decisions

Naming system behavior By default, the macros below produce global effects. They change both the !MN and !NF data sets (Section 1.5). With \ForceName (Section 2.4), they change formatting. Apart from \ForceName, they also change long or short name forms and the outcome of the testing macros in the next section:

Defaults	Name Length	Format Hooks	Test Path
Pre-First Use	Long	First	False
Subsequent Use	Long or short	Subsequent	True

Modifications	Form	Function
\SubvertThis\LANth	Susan B. Anthony	force subsequent use force long form
\ForceName\SAnth	Susan B.	default subsequent use force first-use format
\ForgetThis\SAnth	Susan B. Anthony	force first use; default long default first-use format
\SAnth	Susan B.	default subsequent use default short form

\ForgetName This macro takes the same arguments as \Name. It “forgets” a name, forcing a “pre-first use” case. The syntax is:

`\ForgetName[⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]`

\ForgetThis This prefix macro causes the next instance of a naming macro or shorthand to “forget” a name before printing it. After knowing \Einstein “Einstein” we forget him and again have a first reference: \ForgetThis\Einstein “Albert Einstein.”

3.1

\SubvertName This macro takes the same arguments as \Name. It “subverts” a name, forcing a “subsequent use” case. The syntax is:

`\SubvertName[⟨FNN⟩]{⟨SNN, Affix⟩}[⟨Alternate⟩]`

\SubvertThis This prefix macro causes the next instance of a naming macro or shorthand to “subvert” a name before printing it. As in the table on page 20, \ForgetThis has a higher priority than \SubvertThis and nullifies it when used together.

3.1

\LocalNames \LocalNames restricts the effects of the macros above to the current naming system. \GlobalNames restores the default behavior. We define a macro that reports whether a name exists in the main matter, front matter, both, or none:

```

1 \def\CheckChuck{\bfseries\IfFrontName[Charlie]{Chaplin}%
2   {\IfMainName[Charlie]{Chaplin}{both}{front}}%
3   {\IfMainName[Charlie]{Chaplin}{main}{none}}}
```

We start with no extant name:

`\CheckChuck . . . . . none`

We create a name in the “main matter”:

`\Name*[Charlie]{Chaplin} . . . . . Charlie Chaplin`  
`\CheckChuck . . . . . main`

We switch to the “front-matter” and create a name, but since we are using the quote environment, we add `\global`:

```
\global\NamesInactive
\Name*[Charlie]{Chaplin}..... Charlie Chaplin
\CheckChuck ..... both
```

We now have two names. Their patterns are:

```
Charlie!Chaplin!MN
Charlie!Chaplin!NF
```

We use `\LocalNames` to make `\ForgetName` and `\SubvertName` work with only the front-matter system. Then we “forget” the front-matter name:

```
\LocalNames
\ForgetName[Charlie]{Chaplin}
\CheckChuck ..... main
```

Next we “subvert” the front-matter name to “remember” it again and switch to main matter, again using `\global` to ignore scoping.

```
\SubvertName[Charlie]{Chaplin}
\global\NamesActive
\CheckChuck ..... both
```

We forget the main-matter name and additionally reset the default behavior so that `\ForgetName` and `\SubvertName` work with both systems:

```
\ForgetName[Charlie]{Chaplin}
\GlobalNames
\CheckChuck ..... front
```

Finally, we forget everything. Even though we are in a main-matter section, the front-matter name also goes away:

```
\ForgetName[Charlie]{Chaplin}
\CheckChuck ..... none
```

Back to Section [1.2](#)

### 2.8.2 Testing Decisions

The macros in this section test for the presence or absence of a name, then expand based on the result. For example, they can synchronize information between a float and body text by each testing whether a name exists and making decisions about the information accordingly.

`\IfMainName` In order to test whether or not a “main matter” name control sequence exists, use this long macro that can accommodate paragraph breaks:

`\IfMainName[<FNN>]{<SNN, Affix>}[<Alternate>]{<yes>}{<no>}`

For example, because we have not seen the equivalent of `\Name[Bob]{Hope}` or `\SubvertName[Bob]{Hope}`, we try the following test and get:

`\IfMainName[Bob]{Hope}{Bob here!}{No Bob.} . . . . . No Bob.`

Still, we can create an index entry here with `\IndexName[Bob]{Hope}` and it will not affect the test above. Since, however, we have encountered the equivalent of `\Name{Elizabeth,I}` many times in the document, we get the following result:

`\IfMainName{Elizabeth,I}{Bess here!}{No Bess.} . . . . . Bess here!`

`\IfFrontName` In order to test whether or not a “front matter” name control sequence exists, use this long macro that can accommodate paragraph breaks. Its syntax is:

`\IfFrontName[FNN]{SNN, Affix}[Alternate]{yes}{no}`

This macro works like `\IfMainName`, except using the “front matter” name control sequences as the test subject.

For example, based on Section 2.4, we see that “Carnap is both” a main-matter and front-matter name with the following test:

```

1 \IfFrontName[Rudolph]{Carnap}%
2 {%
3   \IfMainName[Rudolph]{Carnap}%
4     {\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap} is both}%
5     {\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap} is only front-matter}%
6   }%
7 {%
8   \IfMainName[Rudolph]{Carnap}%
9     {\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap} is only main-matter}%
10    {\Name[Rudolph]{Carnap} is not mentioned}%
11  }
```

`\IfAKA` This macro tests whether or not a regular or excluded form of cross-reference control sequence exists. The syntax is:

`\IfAKA[FNN]{SNN, Affix}[Alternate]{y}{n}{excluded}`

This macro works like `\IfMainName`, although it has an additional `{excluded}` branch in order to detect the activity of `\ExcludeName` (Section 2.6.2).

Cross-references are governed by name control sequences ending in !PN (Section 1.5). Regular cross-reference control sequences (the `{y}` path) expand to empty. Excluded control sequences (the `{excluded}` path) expand to !.

`\ExcludeName` creates excluded xrefs; `\IncludeName` destroys them. Regular xrefs are created by `\IndexRef`, `\AKA`, `\AKA*`, and `\PName`; they are destroyed by `\IncludeName*`. Here is how we use this logic:

1. In the text we refer to former pro-wrestler and Minnesota governor [Jesse Ventura](#), `\Name[Jesse]{Ventura}`.
2. We establish his lesser-known legal name as an alias: “[James Janos](#),” `\IndexRef[James]{Janos}{Ventura, Jesse}\Name[James]{Janos}`.
3. We get the result: “[Jesse Ventura](#) is a stage name.” If we do not use `\ExcludeName`, we can leave the `{excluded}` branch empty:

```

1 \IfAKA[James]{Janos}%
2   {\Name*[Jesse]{Ventura} is a stage name}%
3   {\Name*[Jesse]{Ventura} is a regular name}%
4   {}
```

Otherwise, based on Section 2.6.2, we get: “Grinch is excluded”:

```
1 \IfAKA{Grinch}%
2   {\Name{Grinch} is an alias}%
3   {\Name{Grinch} is not an alias}%
4   {\Name{Grinch} is excluded}
```

We can combine all these macros create a complete test:

```
1 \IfAKA[FNN]{SNN, Affix}[Alternate]%
2   {true; it is a pseudonym}%
3   {% if not a pseudonym:
4     \IfFrontName[FNN]{SNN, Affix}[Alternate]% yes path
5     {\IfMainName[FNN]{SNN, Affix}[Alternate]%
6      {both}%
7      {front}%
8     }%
9     {\IfMainName[FNN]{SNN, Affix}[Alternate]% no path
10    {main}%
11    {does not exist}%
12   }%
13 }%
14 {excluded path}
```

We can use the text tag macros with the conditional macros to present information that depends on what names have already occurred. One must avoid unbounded recursion that results in a stack overflow (Section 2.7):

```
1 \IndexRef{Paul}{Saul of Tarsus}
2 \NameAddInfo{Saul, of Tarsus}{\IfMainName{Jesus, Christ}
3   {\IfMainName[Lucius]{Sergius Paulus}
4     {renames himself \Name{Paul}}
5     {a preacher to the Gentiles}}
6   {wrote that he persecuted Christians}}
7
8 \Name{Saul, of Tarsus} \NameQueryInfo{Saul, of Tarsus}. He
9 saw a vision of \Name{Jesus, Christ} on the road to Damascus
10 and became \NameQueryInfo{Saul, of Tarsus}. After converting
11 \Name[Lucius]{Sergius Paulus}, \Name{Saul, of Tarsus}
12 \NameQueryInfo{Saul, of Tarsus} in honor of that.
```

Saul of Tarsus wrote that he persecuted Christians. He saw a vision of Jesus Christ on the road to Damascus and became a preacher to the Gentiles. After converting Lucius Sergius Paulus, Saul renamed himself Paul in honor of that.

Using these tests inside other macros or passing control sequences to them may create false results (see *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*, 212–15). That is why `nameauth` uses token registers to save name arguments (Section 2.10.2. Consider using `\noexpand` in macros passed as name arguments and see also Section 2.11.2. Using the `trace` package, `\show`, or `\meaning` can help one mitigate problems.

Back to Section 1.2

## 2.9 Alternate Name Macros

**3.0** The macros in this section predate `\IndexRef` and have a syntax and behavior recalling early package versions.<sup>26</sup> Using `\IndexRef` with `\Name` can be more flexible (cf. page 41). To save space, we show the syntax of these macros using  $\langle SAFX \rangle$  as the equivalent of  $\langle SNN, Affix \rangle$ . Common properties include:

- These macros do not create page references.
- The target  $[\langle FNN \rangle]\{\langle SAFX \rangle\}$  comes before the xref printed in the text:  $[\langle xref FNN \rangle]\{\langle xref SAFX \rangle\}[\langle xref Alternate \rangle]$ .
- The obsolete syntax cannot be used with  $[\langle FNN \rangle]\{\langle SAFX \rangle\}$ .
- Only the  $\langle SAFX \rangle$  and  $\langle xref SAFX \rangle$  arguments are able to use comma-delimited suffixes.
- One cannot use `\TagName` with a cross-reference, but one can sort it with `\PretagName`  $[\langle xref FNN \rangle]\{\langle xref SAFX \rangle\}\{\langle sort tag \rangle\}$ .

`\AKA`      `\AKA` (*also known as*) and its starred form display an alias in the text and  
`\AKA*` create a cross-reference in the index. They display and format names differently than the name macros:

```
\AKA [\langle FNN \rangle]\{\langle SAFX \rangle\}[\langle xref FNN \rangle]\{\langle xref SAFX \rangle\}[\langle xref Alternate \rangle]
\AKA*[\langle FNN \rangle]\{\langle SAFX \rangle\}[\langle xref FNN \rangle]\{\langle xref SAFX \rangle\}[\langle xref Alternate \rangle]
```

Both macros create a cross-reference in the index from the  $\langle xref FNN \rangle$ ,  $\langle xref SAFX \rangle$ , and  $\langle xref Alternate \rangle$  arguments to a target defined by  $\langle FNN \rangle$  and  $\langle SAFX \rangle$ , regardless of whether that name exists. The order of the name and cross-reference in `\AKA` is opposite that of `\IndexRef`. Otherwise the  $\langle xref Alternate \rangle$  argument would be ambiguous with  $\langle FNN \rangle$ . `\AKA` prints a long form of the cross-reference name in the text. `\SeeAlso` works with `\AKA`, `\AKA*`, and `\PName`.

`\AKA` prints the  $\langle xref FNN \rangle$  and  $\langle xref SAFX \rangle$  arguments in the body text. If  $\langle xref Alternate \rangle$  is present with  $\langle xref FNN \rangle$ , `\AKA` swaps them in the text. If  $\langle xref Alternate \rangle$  is present without  $\langle xref FNN \rangle$ , the old syntax is triggered, which we do not recommend. The caps and reversing macros work with `\AKA`.

**3.0** `\AKA*` prints short name references like `\FName`, meaning that `\ForceFN` works with it in the same manner. For the older behavior of `\AKA*` use the `oldAKA` option or always precede `\AKA*` with `\ForceFN`.

We make cross-references to [Bob Hope](#), where all of the forms below create the cross-reference “Hope, Leslie Townes *see* Hope, Bob”:

<code>\AKA[Bob]{Hope}[Leslie Townes]{Hope}</code>	Leslie Townes Hope
<code>\RevComma\AKA[Bob]{Hope}[Leslie Townes]{Hope}</code>	Hope, Leslie Townes
<code>\AKA[Bob]{Hope}[Leslie Townes]{Hope}[Lester T.]</code>	Lester T. Hope
<code>\AKA*[Bob]{Hope}[Leslie Townes]{Hope}</code>	Leslie Townes
<code>\AKA*[Bob]{Hope}[Leslie Townes]{Hope}[Lester]</code>	Lester

<sup>26</sup>Before version 3.0 the lack of modularity resulted in separate name parsing, name display, and indexing for the naming macros and the alternate name macros. The version 3 series has corrected many early missteps while remaining compatible.

Next we have references to [Louis XIV](#), [Lao-tzu](#), and [Gregory I](#), as well as [Lafcadio Hearn](#) and [Charles du Fresne](#):

<code>\AKA{Louis, XIV}{Sun King}</code>	Sun King
<code>\AKA*{Louis, XIV}{Sun King}</code>	Sun King
<code>\AKA{Lao-tzu}{Li, Er}</code>	Li Er
<code>\AKA*{Lao-tzu}{Li, Er}</code>	Li
<code>\AKA[Charles]{du Fresne}{du Cange}</code>	du Cange
<code>\CapThis\AKA[Charles]{du Fresne}{du Cange}</code>	Du Cange
<code>\CapName\AKA[Lafcadio]{Hearn}{Koizumi, Yakumo}</code>	KOIZUMI Yakumo
<code>\RevName\AKA[Lafcadio]{Hearn}{Koizumi, Yakumo}</code>	Yakumo Koizumi
<code>\AKA{Gregory, I}{Gregory}[the Great]</code>	Gregory the Great
<code>\AKA*{Gregory, I}{Gregory}[the Great]</code>	Gregory
<code>\ForceFN\AKA*{Gregory, I}{Gregory}[the Great]</code>	the Great

`formatAKA` `\AKA` and its derivatives use `\MainNamesHook` and `\FrontNamesHook` to print the cross-reference because that helped keep cross-references distinct from names in early package versions.

The `formatAKA` package option allows first-use formatting of alternate names, but cross-references use their own system for being “first” (Section 1.5). We simulate `formatAKA` and use `\AKA{Elizabeth,I}[Good Queen]{Bess}`. The colors indicate which hooks are used.

**Front Matter:** [Elizabeth I](#) was known as “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
 Again we mention Queen [Elizabeth](#), “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
`\ForceName:` [Good Queen Bess](#).

**Main Matter:** [Elizabeth I](#) was known as “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
 Again we mention Queen [Elizabeth](#), “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
`\ForceName:` [Good Queen Bess](#).

The first appearance of the cross-reference uses the first-use hooks of whatever naming system is active. Thereafter we only use the subsequent-use hooks of both systems unless we use `\ForceName`.

`alwaysformat` Below we compare the behavior of the `alwaysformat` option, where all regular names use only `\NamesFormat` and `\FrontNamesFormat`:

**Front Matter:** [Elizabeth I](#) was known as “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
 Again we mention Queen [Elizabeth](#), “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
`\ForceName:` [Good Queen Bess](#).  
**Main Matter:** [Elizabeth I](#) was known as “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
 Again we mention Queen [Elizabeth](#), “[Good Queen Bess](#).”  
`\ForceName:` [Good Queen Bess](#).

`\PName` These convenience macros (an early feature) print a main name and a cross-  
`\PName*` reference in parentheses:

<code>\PName</code> [ <i>FNN</i> ]{ <i>SAFX</i> }[ <i>xref FNN</i> ]{ <i>xref SAFX</i> }[ <i>xref Alternate</i> ] <code>\PName*</code> [ <i>FNN</i> ]{ <i>SAFX</i> }[ <i>xref FNN</i> ]{ <i>xref SAFX</i> }[ <i>xref Alternate</i> ]
---

The starred form `\PName*` is like the starred form `\Name*` to the extent that it prints a long form of *FNN**SAFX*. It does not affect the cross-reference arguments *xref FNN**xref SAFX**xref Alternate*.

Except `\SkipIndex`, prefix macros only affect  $\langle FNN \rangle \langle SAFX \rangle$ , not the cross-reference, which always takes a long form. `\SkipIndex` keeps both names out of the index. `\PName` cannot use the obsolete syntax for the main name, but it can do so for the alternate name.

Recommended Macro / Output	Index
<code>\PName[Mark]{Twain}%</code> <code>[Samuel L.]{Clemens}</code> Mark Twain (Samuel L. Clemens) Twain (Samuel L. Clemens)	Clemens, Samuel L. <i>see</i> Twain, Mark Clemens, Samuel L. <i>see</i> Twain, Mark
<code>\PName*[Mark]{Twain}%</code> <code>[Samuel L.]{Clemens}[Sam]</code> Mark Twain (Sam Clemens)	Clemens, Samuel L. <i>see</i> Twain, Mark
<code>\PName{Voltaire}%</code> <code>[François-Marie]{Arouet}</code> Voltaire (François-Marie Arouet) Voltaire (François-Marie Arouet)	Arouet, François-Marie <i>see</i> Voltaire Arouet, François-Marie <i>see</i> Voltaire
<code>\PName{William, I}%</code> <code>{William, the Conqueror}</code> William I (William the Conqueror) William (William the Conqueror)	William the Conqueror <i>see</i> William I William the Conqueror <i>see</i> William I
<code>\PName*{William, I}%</code> <code>{William, the Conqueror}</code> William I (William the Conqueror)	William the Conqueror <i>see</i> William I
<code>\PretagName%</code> <code>{\textit{Doctor mellifluus}}%</code> <code>{Doctor mellifluus}</code> <code>\PName{Bernard, of Clairvaux}%</code> <code>{\textit{Doctor mellifluus}}</code> Bernard of Clairvaux ( <i>Doctor mellifluus</i> ) Bernard ( <i>Doctor mellifluus</i> )	<i>Doctor mellifluus see</i> Bernard of Clairvaux <i>Doctor mellifluus see</i> Bernard of Clairvaux
<code>\ForgetThis\PName{Lao-tzu}{Li, Er}</code> Lao-tzu (Li Er) Lao-tzu (Li Er)	Li Er <i>see</i> Lao-tzu Li Er <i>see</i> Lao-tzu
Discouraged Macro / Output	Index
<code>\PName{William, I}{William}%</code> <code>[the Conqueror]</code> William (William the Conqueror)	William the Conqueror <i>see</i> William I
<code>\PName{Lao-tzu}{Li}{Er}</code> Lao-tzu (Li Er)	Li Er <i>see</i> Lao-tzu

The newer non-Western syntax does not work with `\PName`. If we attempted to use `\SkipIndex\PName*{William, I}[William]{the Conqueror}`, this macro would put “William I (William the Conqueror)” in the body text, but its index entry would be incorrect: “the Conqueror, William *see* William I”.

Back to Section 1.2



## 2.10 Longer Examples

Examples from the remainder of this manual are in `examples.tex`, included with the `nameauth` documentation.

`dtx` files When creating package documentation, any name that has a macro in its argument should be set up in the driver section (the `nameauth` environment and tags from `\PretagName` and `\TagName`). Otherwise, errors can result.

### 2.10.1 Hooks: Intro

In these sections on advanced topics we reset all formatting hooks to do nothing. This helps us focus on the modifications made hereafter.

Before we get to the use of text tags and name conditionals in name formatting, we seek to illustrate that something more complex than a font switch can occur in `\NamesFormat`. Below we put the first mention of a name in boldface, along with a marginal notation if possible.

```
1 \let\OldFormat\NamesFormat
2 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{\textbf{#1}\unless\ifinner
3   \marginpar{\raggedleft\scriptsize #1}\fi}
4 \let\NamesFormat\OldFormat
5 \PretagName{Vlad, Tepeş}{Vlad Tepeş} % for accented names
6 \TagName{Vlad, II}{ Dracul}          % for index information
7 \TagName{Vlad, III}{ Dracula}
```

Within the document after the preamble:

```
8 Name{Vlad, III}[III Dracula], known as
9 \AKA{Vlad III}{Vlad, Tepeş} (the Impaler)
10 after his death, was the son of \Name{Vlad, II}[II Dracul],
11 a member of the Order of the Dragon. Later references to
12 ‘‘\Name*{Vlad, III}’’ and ‘‘\Name{Vlad, III}’’ appear thus.
```

Vlad III Dracula  
Vlad II Dracul

**Vlad III Dracula**, known as Vlad Tepeş (the Impaler) after his death, was the son of **Vlad II Dracul**, a member of the Order of the Dragon. Later references to “Vlad III” and “Vlad” appear thus.

```
13 \let\NamesFormat\OldFormat
```

Now we have reverted to the default `\NamesFormat` and we get:

- `\ForgetThis\Name{Vlad, III}[III Dracula]...` Vlad III Dracula
- `\Name*{Vlad, III}.....` Vlad III
- `\Name{Vlad, III}.....` Vlad

We also set up the cross-reference `\IndexRef{Dracula}{Vlad III}`. Compare the examples for Demetrius I in Section [2.3.4](#).

Back to Section [1.2](#)

## 2.10.2 Hooks: Life Dates

We can use name conditionals (Section 2.8.2) and text tags (Section 2.7) to add life information to names when desired.

The example `\NamesFormat` below adds a text tag to the first occurrences of main-matter names. It uses internal macros of `\@nameauth@Name`. To prevent errors, the Boolean values `\if@nameauth@InName` and `\if@nameauth@InAKA` are true only within the scope of `\@nameauth@Name` and `\AKA` respectively.

This package makes three token registers available to facilitate using the name conditional macros as we do below. These registers are necessary for names that contain accents and diacritics.<sup>27</sup>

Below the first use of a name is in small caps. Text tags are in boldface with naming macros, and roman with `\AKA`. Just because we set up a cross-reference does not mean that we use `\AKA` by default, as was the case in early versions of `nameauth`. We use `\ForceName` to use it more than once with `\AKA`:

```

1 \newif\ifNoTag% allows us to work around \ForgetName
2 \let\OldFormat\NamesFormat
3 \let\OldFrontFormat\FrontNamesFormat
4 \makeatletter
5 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{\begingroup%
6   \protected@edef\temp{\endgroup\textsc{#1}}%
7   \unless\ifNoTag
8     \if@nameauth@InName
9       {\bfseries\noexpand\NameQueryInfo
10        [\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksa}]
11        {\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksb}}
12        [\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksc}]} \fi
13     \if@nameauth@InAKA
14       {\normalfont\noexpand\NameQueryInfo
15        [\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksa}]
16        {\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksb}}
17        [\unexpanded\expandafter{\the\@nameauth@toksc}]} \fi
18   \fi}\temp\global\NoTagfalse%
19 }
20 \makeatother
21 \let\FrontNamesFormat\NamesFormat

```

We print tags in the first use hooks unless `\NoTag` is set true. This method uses the two  $\epsilon$ -TeX primitives `\noexpand` and `\unexpanded` to avoid repetition of `\expandafter`. Since `nameauth` depends on `etoolbox`, we assume  $\epsilon$ -TeX.

Before we can refer to any text tags, we must create them. Using the approach above, we include a leading space in the text tags. The leading space is needed only when a text tag appears.<sup>28</sup> We also set up a cross-reference, which we will use regardless of whether we also use `\AKA`. The cross-reference will be created only once and skipped thereafter:

```

22 \NameAddInfo[George]{Washington}{ (1732--99)}
23 \NameAddInfo[Mustafa]{Kemal}{ (1881--1938)}
24 \NameAddInfo{Atatürk}{ (in 1934, a special surname)}
25 \IndexRef{Atatürk}{Kemal, Mustafa}

```

<sup>27</sup>In `\AKA` these registers correspond to the **last** three arguments, the `xref`.

<sup>28</sup>Another way to add that space is to put it in the conditional path of the formatting hook and leave it out of the text tags entirely: `...{ }\noexpand\NameQueryInfo...`

Now we begin with the first example, which, after all the setup, looks deceptively simple, but highly reusable without extra work:

```
26 \ForgetThis\Wash held office 1789--97.
27 No tags: \Wash.\
28 First use, dates suppressed: \NoTagtrue\ForgetThis\Wash.
```

GEORGE WASHINGTON (**1732–99**) held office 1789–97.  
No tags: Washington.  
First use, dates suppressed: GEORGE WASHINGTON.

Since we already set up a cross-reference with `\IndexRef`, we can use just the the naming macros with “Atatürk” and get the desired formatting without any page references in the index:

```
29 \Name[Mustafa]{Kemal} was granted the name
30 \Name{Atatürk}. We mention \Name[Mustafa]{Kemal}
31 and \Name{Atatürk} again.
32
33 First use, no tag:
34 \NoTagtrue\ForgetThis\Name{Atatürk}.
```

MUSTAFA KEMAL (**1881–1938**) was granted the name ATATÜRK (in 1934, a special surname). We mention Kemal and Atatürk again.  
First use, no tag: ATATÜRK.

Since we set up distinct formatting for `\AKA` (`\normalfont` instead of boldface for text tags associated with cross-references), we now simulate the `formatAKA` package option and use `\ForceName` with `\AKA`:

```
35 \makeatletter\@nameauth@AKAFormattrue\makeatother
36 \ForgetThis\Name[Mustafa]{Kemal} was granted the name
37 \ForceName\AKA[Mustafa]{Kemal}{Atatürk}. We mention
38 \Name[Mustafa]{Kemal} and \AKA[Mustafa]{Kemal}{Atatürk} again.
39
40 First use, no tag:
41 \NoTagtrue\ForceName\AKA[Mustafa]{Kemal}{Atatürk}.
```

MUSTAFA KEMAL (**1881–1938**) was granted the name ATATÜRK (in 1934, a special surname). We mention Kemal and Atatürk again.  
First use, no tag: ATATÜRK.

Please remember to reset the formatting:

```
42 \let\NamesFormat\OldFormat
43 \let\FrontNamesFormat\OldFrontFormat
```

Back to Section 1.2

### 2.10.3 Hooks: Advanced

#### Alternate Formatting

- 3.1** The alternate formatting framework provides features that aid both error protection and ease of use. This section uses `\AltFormatActive`. We do not use the names in this section elsewhere. A name designed for the alternate formatting regime may cause spurious index entries when used in the default formatting regime.

Both `\AltFormatActive` and `\AltFormatActive*` set the internal Boolean flag `\@nameauth@AltFormattrue`, enabling alternate formatting. `\AltFormatActive` sets `\@nameauth@DoAlttrue`, which activates formatting. `\AltFormatInactive` sets both flags false.

`\AltFormatActive*` normally suppresses formatting changes but it still forces `\CapThis` to work through `\AltCaps`. This produces the default look of `nameauth` and prevents Continental formatting, but it also reduces spurious index entries and errors if many names use macros in their arguments.

Alternate formatting protects against errors created when `\@nameauth@Cap` (used by `\CapThis`) gets a failure result from `\@nameauthUTFtest`, but that result is neither a letter nor a macro that expands to a sequence of letters. Protected macros and other cases may create errors if `\MakeUppercase` is applied to them. `\AltCaps` and `\CapThis` work together to avoid this problem (Section 2.5).

#### Continental Format

Here we look in greater detail at how `nameauth` implements the advanced version of Continental formatting. Font changes occur in the short macros `\textSC`, `\textIT`, `\textBF`, and `\textUC`. They all look similar to `\textSC`:

```
1 \newcommand*\textSC[1]{%
2   \if@nameauth@DoAlt\textsc{#1}\else#1\fi
3 }
```

If the `altformat` option or `\AltFormatActive` is used, formatting occurs in both the text and in the index. We want small caps on by default in the text and index, then off in subsequent uses. Thus, we use `\AltFormatActive`, then redefine `\MainNameHook` because it is the subsequent use hook. `\AltOff` deactivates formatting only in the formatting hooks:

```
4 \newcommand*\AltOff{%
5   \if@nameauth@InHook\@nameauth@DoAltfalse\fi
6 }
```

`\CapThis` now triggers `\AltCaps` to capitalize its argument:

```
7 \newcommand*\AltCaps[1]{%
8   \if@nameauth@InHook
9     \if@nameauth@DoCaps\MakeUppercase{#1}\else#1\fi
10  \else#1\fi
11 }
```

We must put `\noexpand` before `\textSC`, `\AltCaps`, and so on to prevent them from expanding outside of the formatting hooks.

Before we alter the formatting hooks, we either can `\let` the hook macros to recall them later or we can use `\begingroup` and `\endgroup` to create a new scope that localizes any changes. We use scoping in this section.

This final step **does not come** from the `nameauth` source. We must redefine the formatting hooks ourselves. One of the simplest ways to do this when using the `altformat` option or `\AltFormatActive` is:

```
12 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook{\AltOff}
13 \let\FrontNameHook\MainNameHook
```

To suppress all formatting in the front-matter text, one need simply to use `\let\FrontNamesFormat\MainNameHook`. Continental formatting usually alters at least one element in the required name argument, as we see below:

```
14 \begin{nameauth}
15   \< Adams   & John   & \noexpand\textSC{Adams}      & >
16   \< SDJR    & Sammy & \noexpand\textSC{Davis},
17                                   \noexpand\textSC{Jr}.    & >
18   \< HAR      &      & Harun, \noexpand\textSC%
19                                   {\noexpand\AltCaps{a}l-Rashid} & >
20   \< Mencius  &      & \noexpand\textSC{Mencius}      & >
21 \end{nameauth}
```

Now we must ensure that these names are sorted properly in the index. When sorting names, be sure to use `\noexpand` before the macros:

```
22 \PretagName[John]{\noexpand\textSC{Adams}}{Adams, John}
23 \PretagName[Sammy]%
24   {\noexpand\textSC{Davis}, \noexpand\textSC{Jr}.}%
25   {Davis, Sammy, Jr.}
26 \PretagName{Harun, \noexpand\textSC%
27   {\noexpand\AltCaps{a}l-Rashid}}{Harun al-Rashid}
28 \PretagName{\noexpand\textSC{Mencius}}{Mencius}
```

First	Next	Long	Short
\Adams	\Adams	\LAdams	\SAdams
John ADAMS	Adams	John Adams	John
\SDJR	\SDJR	\LSDJR	\SSDJR
Sammy DAVIS JR.	Davis	Sammy Davis Jr.	Sammy
\HAR	\HAR	\LHAR	\SHAR
Harun AL-RASHID	Harun	Harun al-Rashid	Harun
\Mencius	\Mencius	\LMencius	\SMencius
MENCIUS	Mencius	Mencius	Mencius

- Punctuation detection works: Sammy DAVIS JR. Also Sammy Davis Jr. Then DAVIS. Now Davis. (We used `\ForceName` for formatting.)
- `\ForceName\DropAffix\LSDJR` gives Sammy DAVIS. Otherwise, only using the macro `\DropAffix\LSDJR` gives Sammy Davis.
- `\RevComma\LAdams` yields Adams, John. All the reversing macros work.
- `\ForceName\ForceFN\SHAR` produces AL-RASHID. `\ForceFN\SHAR` produces al-Rashid. If we add `\CapThis` we get AL-RASHID and Al-Rashid.<sup>29</sup>
- One must include all the macros in the name arguments.

If we use the `formatAKA` option we can refer to Mencius as MENG Ke, and again Meng Ke. We get that with:

<sup>29</sup>The way that Continental resources treat certain affixes relates to similar issues in [Mulvany, 168–73]. Handling non-Western names in Western sources can be a gray area. One ought take care to be culturally sensitive in these matters.

```

29 \PretagName{\noexpand\textSC{Meng}, Ke}{Meng Ke}
30 \AKA{\noexpand\textSC{Mencius}}{\noexpand\textSC{Meng}, Ke}

```

## Rolling Your Own: Basic

Here we set out on the path to custom formatting by using package features that have been implemented already and look similar to the solutions in Section 2.5.



When redesigning formatting hooks, one should use `\AltFormatActive` or the `altformat` option to enable alternate formatting and prevent `\CapThis` from breaking custom formatting macros.

We recommend examining the internal package flag `\@nameauth@DoAlt`, which activates alternate formatting, `\@nameauth@DoCaps`, which handles capitalization, and `\@nameauth@InHook`, which is true when the formatting hooks are called. See page 91 and following. If you create your own macros, they will look similar:

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newcommand*\Fbox[1]{%
3   \if@nameauth@DoAlt\protect\fbbox{#1}\else#1\fi
4 }
5 \makeatother

```

Since `\AltCaps` is part of `nameauth`, you need not reinvent that wheel. Just use it. The final step is redefining the hooks, which can be as simple as:

```

6 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook{\AltOff}
7 \let\FrontNameHook\MainNameHook

```

When sorting names, be sure to use `\noexpand` as shown previously:

```

8 \PretagName[Pierre-Jean]%
9   {\noexpand\Fbox{\noexpand\AltCaps{d}e Smet}}}%
10  {de Smet, Pierre-Jean}
11
12 \begin{nameauth}
13   \< deSmet & Pierre-Jean &
14     \noexpand\Fbox{\noexpand\AltCaps{d}e Smet} & >
15 \end{nameauth}

```

Now we show how the formatting hooks work in the body text. One can check the index to see that it is formatted properly and consistently.

First	Next	Long	Short
<code>\deSmet</code>	<code>\deSmet</code>	<code>\LdeSmet</code>	<code>\SdeSmet</code>
Pierre-Jean <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">de Smet</span>	de Smet	Pierre-Jean de Smet	Pierre-Jean

The capitalized version `\CapThis\deSmet` is De Smet. This also works for a formatted use via `\ForceName:` De Smet.

Some formatting, such as the use of `\textSC`, is fairly standard. Other formatting, such as `\Fbox` above, is ornamental and may be handled better with custom features (Section 2.10.4), but those features appear only in the text.

## Rolling Your Own: Intermediate

“Intermediate” and “advanced” refer to the way hooks were designed before version 3.1. We begin the journey to more customized formatting by looking at `\NameParser`, whose logic Sections 3.4 and 3.6 show in detail.

`\NameParser` This user-accessible parser (Section 3.6) builds a printed name from the internal macros `\FNN`, `\SNN`, `\rootb` and `\suffb`. It uses the following Boolean flags:<sup>30</sup>

Only one or the other of these can be true to avoid undocumented behavior.

<code>\if@nameauth@FullName</code>	Print a full name if true.
<code>\if@nameauth@FirstName</code>	Print a first name if true.

Reversing without commas overrides reversing with commas.

<code>\if@nameauth@RevThis</code>	Reverse name order if true.
<code>\if@nameauth@EastFN</code>	toggled by <code>\ForceFN</code> .
<code>\if@nameauth@RevThisComma</code>	Reverse Western name, add comma.

We create a hook that can ignore the output of `\@nameauth@Name`, which is the #1 in the hook dispatcher’s code `\bgroup\Hook\{#1}\egroup`:

```
\renewcommand*⟨FirstHook⟩[1]{...\NameParser...}
```

With the `altformat` option or `\AltFormatActive` we can design a subsequent-use hook that deactivates formatting inside of it:

```
\renewcommand*⟨SubsequentHook⟩[1]{...\AltOff\NameParser...}
```

If we used `\AltFormatActive*`, where the formatting macros are enabled, but deactivated, then we might want a hook that activates the macros:

```
\renewcommand*⟨Hook⟩[1]{...\AltOn\NameParser...}
```

Within the hooks we can use the user-level parser as often as we want. We also can change internal Boolean flags, for example:

```
1 \makeatletter
2 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{\small%
3   \hbox to 3.5em{[now]\hfill}\space\NameParser\%
4   \@nameauth@FullNametrue%
5   \hbox to 3.5em{[long]\hfill}\space\NameParser\%
6   \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
7   \@nameauth@FirstNametrue%
8   \hbox to 3.5em{[short]\hfill}\space\NameParser}
9 \makeatother
10 \let\MainNameHook\NamesFormat
```

`\JRIV` displays:

<code>[now]</code>	Rockefeller
<code>[long]</code>	John David Rockefeller IV
<code>[short]</code>	John David

The proof of concept above is interesting, but not very useful. Now we move on toward more useful designs, based on Sections 2.10.1 and 2.10.2.

---

<sup>30</sup>These exclude all capitalization macros.

We begin by defining a name that is composed only of macros:

```

1 \begin{nameauth}
2   \< Shak & \noexpand\WM & \noexpand\SHK & >
3 \end{nameauth}
4 \PretagName[\noexpand\WM]{\noexpand\SHK}{Shakespeare, William}
5 \PretagName[Robert]{\textSC{Burns}}{Burns, Robert}

```

Now we define the flags by which the macros \WM and \SHK expand differently in the formatting hooks than in the index:

```

6 \newif\ifSpecialFN
7 \newif\ifSpecialSN
8 \newif\ifRevertSN
9 \newcommand*{\WM}{\ifSpecialFN Wm.\else William\fi}
10 \newcommand*{\SHK}{\ifRevertSN \textSC{Shakespeare}\else
11     \ifSpecialSN \noexpand\AltCaps{t}he Bard\else
12     \textSC{Shakespeare}\fi\fi}
13 \newcommand*\Revert{\RevertSNtrue}
14 \makeatletter

```

Finally, we define the two formatting hooks that trigger these changes:

```

15 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]{%
16   \RevertSNfalse\SpecialFNfalse\SpecialSNfalse#1%
17   \unless\ifinner\marginpar{%
18     \footnotesize\raggedleft%
19     \@nameauth@FullNametrue%
20     \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
21     \@nameauth@EastFNfalse%
22     \SpecialFNtrue\SpecialSNfalse%
23     \NameParser}%
24   \fi\global\RevertSNfalse}
25 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]{%
26   \AltOff\SpecialFNfalse\SpecialSNtrue#1%
27   \unless\ifinner
28     \unless\ifRevertSN
29       \marginpar{%
30         \footnotesize\raggedleft%
31         \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
32         \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
33         \@nameauth@EastFNfalse%
34         \SpecialFNfalse\SpecialSNfalse%
35         \NameParser}%
36       \fi
37   \fi\global\RevertSNfalse}
38 \makeatother

```

Wm. SHAKESPEARE	William SHAKESPEARE \Shak is the national poet of England in much
Robert BURNS	the same way as Robert BURNS \Name[Robert]{\textSC{Burns}} is that
	of Scotland. With the latter's rise of influence in the 1800s, Shakespeare
Shakespeare	\Revert\Shak became known as "the Bard" \Shak.

First, we put macros \WM and \SHK in name arguments using \noexpand. That will make the index work properly. We use \PretagName to sort the names. We set up three flags. One is for \WM and two are for \SHK. \Revert is used to print a last name without a margin note.



In the first-use hook we allow only the canonical name via `\RevertSNfalse`, `\SpecialFNfalse`, and `\SpecialSNfalse`. The default global formatting state is set by `\AltFormatActive`. We print the canonical name in the body text. If not in inner horizontal mode, we print a margin paragraph with an alternate full name using `\NameParser` and two flags. Both hooks set `\RevertSNfalse` so that `\Revert` works on a per-name basis. The subsequent-use hook disables formatting with `\AltOff`, but it allows variant forms.

## Rolling Your Own: Advanced



Here is how formatting hooks were designed before version 3.0. Updating these older hooks is helpful, but may not be necessary. Here we do not use the internal package macros. We only use `\NameParser` in the hooks to produce output. We still recommend using `\AltFormatActive` to prevent problems with `\CapThis`.

Three flags replace package internals. `\@nameauth@DoAlt` activates formatting; `\@nameauth@DoCaps` is set by `\CapThis`; and `\@nameauth@InHook` is set by the hook dispatcher. Setting `\Fboxtrue` is equivalent to using `\AltFormatActive`:

```
1 \newif\ifFbox% Replaces \@nameauth@DoAlt
2 \newif\ifFirstCap% Replaces \@nameauth@DoCaps
3 \newif\ifInHook% Replaces \@nameauth@InHook
4 \Fboxtrue
```

The formatting macro is like what we have seen, except it refers to `\ifFbox`:

```
5 \renewcommand*\Fbox[1]{%
6   \ifFbox\protect\fbox{#1}\else#1\fi
7 }
```

Our new `\AltCaps` works like the built-in version, except it does not use the internal macros and flags:

```
8 \renewcommand*\AltCaps[1]{%
9   \ifInHook
10    \ifFirstCap\MakeUppercase{#1}\else#1\fi
11   \else
12     #1%
13   \fi
14 }
```

Here we redefine `\CapThis` to use our flag instead of the internal flag:

```
15 \renewcommand*\CapThis{\FirstCaptrue}
```

We have to reproduce the logic and macros that the package would have provided. That means defining everything, including `\NamesFormat`, from scratch:

```
16 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]
17   {\InHooktrue\NameParser\global\FirstCapfalse}
```

Changes to `\ifInHook` (default false) and `\ifFbox` (default true) are local to the scope in which the hook macros are called. `\ifFirstCap` must be set globally. Below we reproduce the logic of `\AltOff` before `\NameParser`:

```
18 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]
19   {\Fboxfalse\InHooktrue\NameParser\global\FirstCapfalse}
```

We avoid spurious index entries in the front matter by using the same hooks.

```
20 \let\FrontNamesFormat\Namesformat
21 \let\FrontNameHook\MainNameHook
```

Because we use `\noexpand`, our “old-style” macros will index the following names under the same entry as the “new-style” macros.

First	Next	Long	Short
<code>\deSmet</code>	<code>\deSmet</code>	<code>\LdeSmet</code>	<code>\SdeSmet</code>
Pierre-Jean <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">de Smet</span>	de Smet	Pierre-Jean de Smet	Pierre-Jean

The capitalized version `\CapThis\deSmet` is De Smet. This also works for a formatted use via `\ForceName: De Smet`.



We can reuse new-style names with old-style macros, shown below in abbreviated fashion. We keep the flags `\ifFirstCap` and `\ifInHook`. We also keep the redefined `\AltCaps`, `\CapThis`, and `\NamesFormat`. We then add:

```
1 \newif\ifCaps
2 \Capstrue
3 \renewcommand*\textSC[1]{%
4   \ifCaps\textsc{#1}\else#1\fi
5 }
6 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]
7 {%
8   \Capsfalse\InHooktrue\NameParser%
9   \global\FirstCapfalse%
10 }
11 \let\FrontNameHook\MainNameHook
```

The names below have the same declarations and index entries as they did above. They look and work the same but use different back-end macros:

First	Next	Long	Short
John ADAMS	Adams	John Adams	John
Sammy DAVIS JR.	Davis	Sammy Davis Jr.	Sammy
Harun AL-RASHID	Harun	Harun al-Rashid	Harun
MENCIUS	Mencius	Mencius	Mencius

- Punctuation detection works: Sammy DAVIS JR. Also Sammy Davis Jr. Then DAVIS. Now Davis. (We used `\ForceName` for formatting.)
- `\ForceName\DropAffix\LSDJR` gives Sammy DAVIS. Otherwise, only using the macro `\DropAffix\LSDJR` gives Sammy Davis.
- `\RevComma\LAdams` yields Adams, John. All the reversing macros work.
- `\ForceName\ForceFN\SHAR` produces AL-RASHID. `\ForceFN\SHAR` produces al-Rashid. If we add `\CapThis` we get AL-RASHID and Al-Rashid.

We now resume normal formatting with `\AltFormatInactive` and close the scope that we began at the start of Section 2.10.1.

Back to Section 1.2

## 2.10.4 Customization



Assuming that redefining hooks and adding control sequences is insufficient, one could redesign the core name macros partially or wholly, then hook those modifications into the `nameauth` package without needing to patch the style file itself.

`\NameauthName` All these macros are set by default to `\@nameauth@Name`, the internal name parser. `\Name`, or an unmodified shorthand, calls `\NameauthName`. `\Name*`, or an L-shorthand, sets `\@nameauth@FullNametrue`, then calls `\NameauthLName`. `\FName`, or an S-shorthand, sets `\@nameauth@FirstNametrue`, then calls `\NameauthFName`. One should not modify `\Name` and `\FName` directly.

Next we see a minimal working example that implements the obsolete syntax. We use few internal Boolean values, save those governing name forms. We do not implement short forms or any other features in `nameauth`. We must index the names with `\IndexName`. This example shows how to hook these redefined macros into the user interface:

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newcommand*{\MyName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]}{
3   \protected@edef\@a{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
4   \protected@edef\@b{\trim@spaces{#2}}%
5   \protected@edef\@c{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
6   \ifx\b\empty fail \else
7     \ifx\a\empty
8       \ifx\c\empty \hbox to 5em{Mononym:\hfill} {\b}\else
9       \hbox to 5em{Eastern:\hfill} {\b\ \c}\fi
10    \else
11      \ifx\c\empty \hbox to 5em{Western:\hfill} {\a\ \b}\else
12      \hbox to 5em{Alternate:\hfill} {\c\ \b}\fi
13    \fi
14  \fi
15  \global\@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
16  \global\@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
17 }
18 \makeatother
19 \let\MyLName\MyName
20 \let\MyFName\MyName
21 \renewcommand*\NameauthName{\MyName}
22 \renewcommand*\NameauthLName{\MyLName}
23 \renewcommand*\NameauthFName{\MyFName}
24 \IndexName[George]{Washington}
25 \IndexName[M.T.]{Cicero}
26 \IndexName{Dagobert}[I]
27 \IndexName{Aristotle}

```

<code>\Wash</code>	Western:	George Washington
<code>\Cicero[Marcus Tullius]</code>	Alternate:	Marcus Tullius Cicero
<code>\Dagb</code>	Eastern:	Dagobert I
<code>\Aris</code>	Mononym:	Aristotle

The previous example is not particularly useful. There is, however, a more practical use for these macros. One could choose to implement additional features, then pass the information in the name argument token registers to the extant parsing macros of `nameauth` (cf. Section 2.10.2).

Below we introduce formatting that is additional to, inter-operative with, yet distinct from the formatting hooks:

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newcommand*{\MyName}[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]{%
3   \@nameauth@toksa\expandafter{#1}%
4   \@nameauth@toksb\expandafter{#2}%
5   \@nameauth@toksc\expandafter{#3}%
6   \hbox to 4em{Normal: \hfill}%
7   \fcolorbox{black}{gray!25!white}{\@nameauth@Name[#1]{#2}{#3}}%
8 }
9 \newcommand*{\MyLName}[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]{%
10  \@nameauth@toksa\expandafter{#1}%
11  \@nameauth@toksb\expandafter{#2}%
12  \@nameauth@toksc\expandafter{#3}%
13  \hbox to 4em{Long: \hfill}%
14  \fcolorbox{black}{green!25!white}{\@nameauth@Name[#1]{#2}{#3}}%
15 }
16 \newcommand*{\MyFName}[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]{%
17  \@nameauth@toksa\expandafter{#1}%
18  \@nameauth@toksb\expandafter{#2}%
19  \@nameauth@toksc\expandafter{#3}%
20  \hbox to 4em{Short: \hfill}%
21  \fcolorbox{black}{yellow!25!white}{\@nameauth@Name[#1]{#2}{#3}}%
22 }
23 \makeatother
24 \renewcommand*\NamesFormat[1]
25   {\hbox to 9em{\hfil\scshape#1\hfil}}
26 \renewcommand*\MainNameHook[1]{\hbox to 9em{\hfil#1\hfil}}
27 \renewcommand*\NameauthName{\MyName}
28 \renewcommand*\NameauthLName{\MyLName}
29 \renewcommand*\NameauthFName{\MyFName}

\ForgetName[Adolf]{Harnack}

\Harnack Normal: ADOLF HARNACK
\ LHarnack[Adolf von] Long: Adolf von Harnack
\Harnack Normal: Harnack
\SHarnack Short: Adolf

```

**3.3** After the name is printed in the body text, the internal macros **globally** set `\@nameauth@FullNamefalse` and `\@nameauth@FirstNamefalse`, as well as other flags related to the prefix macros. This prevents certain cases of undocumented behavior in versions of `nameauth` before 3.3, where resetting flags locally could cause unexpected name forms. If an existing document leverages the local resetting of flags, one can use the `oldreset` option. Compare Section 2.6.1.

`\global` Like many of the macros in this package, these naming macros can be redefined or used locally within a scope without making global changes to the document unless you specifically use `\global`.

Back to Section 1.2

## 2.11 Technical Notes

This manual was created with pdf $\text{\LaTeX}$

### Thanks

Thanks to [Marc van Dongen](#), [Enrico Gregorio](#), [Philipp Stephani](#), [Heiko Oberdiek](#), [Uwe Lueck](#), [Dan Luecking](#) and [Robert Schlicht](#) for assistance in early versions of this package. Thanks also to users for valuable feedback.

### 2.11.1 General

About the package itself:

- For version 3.2 behavior, use both the `oldpass` and `oldreset` options.
- For version 2.6 behavior, use `oldpass`, `oldreset`, and `oldAKA`.
- The package works with both `xindy` and `makeindex`.
- 3.0 • Name output, index entry creation, and index cross-reference creation occur in independent modules.
- 3.0 • Use the `verbose` option for warnings about indexing.
- The `nameauth` environment always will emit warnings as needed.
- 2.6 • The `comma` option and the older syntax are no longer restrictive, save with `\AKA` and its derivatives. See Sections [1.4](#), [2.3.1](#), and [2.9](#).
- 2.5 • No formatting is selected by default.

About the manual:

- This manual is the test suite.
- This manual is designed for both current and older  $\text{\LaTeX}$  distributions.
- 3.3 • This manual has been redesigned.
- It is compatible with both A4 and US letter formats.
- We mention when this manual changes package internals.

About package building:

- The `nameauth` package requires `etoolbox`, `suffix`, `trimspaces`, and `xargs`. The `dtx` file encoding is UTF-8; we assume Unicode support.
- We tested this release in dvi mode (`latex` and `dvilualatex`), and in pdf mode (`pdf $\text{\LaTeX}$` , `lualatex`, and `xelatex`). We used `makeindex`.
- This release has been tested on GNU/Linux (distro TL 2017 and vanilla TL 2019), and Windows (Mik $\text{\TeX}$ , using GNU make via Cygwin.)
- The release uploaded to CTAN is generated using `pdf $\text{\LaTeX}$`  in GNU/Linux.

### 2.11.2 Active Unicode

With `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}` we can use many active Unicode characters automatically.<sup>31</sup> We already covered using `\PretagName` to sort names with these characters (Section 2.6.3). Below we group by accents and diacritical marks:

acute	Á Ć É Ĝ • Í Ĺ Ń Ó Ř Ś Ú Ý Ž	á ć é ğ • í í ń ó ř ś ú ý ž
grave	À • È • • Ì Ò Ù	à • è • • ì ò ù
circumflex	Â Ĉ Ê Ğ Ĥ Î Ĵ Ô Š Ů Ŵ Ŷ	â ĉ ê ĝ ĥ î ĵ ô š ů ŵ ŷ
tilde	Ã • • • • Ñ Ñ Ñ Ñ	ã • • • • ñ ñ ñ ñ
diaeresis <sup>32</sup>	Ä • Ë • • Ì Ò Ù ÿ	ä • ë • • ì ò ù ÿ
cedilla	• Ç • Ğ Ķ Ĺ Ń Ŗ Š Ţ	• ç • ğ ķ ļ ń ŗ š ť
macron	Ā • Ē Ĝ • Ī Ō Ū Æ Ÿ	ā • ē ġ • ī ō ū æ ŷ
breve	Ă • • Ģ • Ĭ Ŏ Ŭ	ă • • ģ • ĭ ŏ ŭ
dot / dotless	Ĥ Ĉ Ė Ğ • Ĩ Ž	ĥ ĉ ė ğ • ĩ ž
ogonek	Ą • Ę • • Ĳ Ų Ŵ	ą • ę • • ĳ ų ŵ
caron	Ǻ Č Ď Ě Ğ Ĩ Ĵ Ľ Ń Ŏ Ř Š Ţ Ů Ž	ǻ č ď ě ğ ĩ ĵ ľ ń ŏ ř š ť ů ž
various	Å Æ Ð (eth) Ð (stroke) Ĳ Ľ Ĳ	å æ ð ð ĳ ĳ ĳ
	Ø Œ Ő Ŭ Ů Ű Ų Ţ	ø œ ő ŭ ů Ű Ų Ţ

Additional Unicode characters can be made available when using fonts with TS1 glyphs (pages 455–463 in *The LaTeX Companion*). Compare the list: <http://tug.ctan.org/info/symbols/comprehensive/> or `texdoc comprehensive`.

When using a font with TS1 glyphs and slots, the following preamble snippet lets one add more Unicode characters. That enables one to write, “In Congrefs, July 4, 1776” as “‘In Congrefs, July 4, 1776’”:

```

1 \usepackage[utf8]{inputenc} % For older TL releases
2 \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}
3 \usepackage{lmodern}% Contains TS1 glyph 115
4 \usepackage{newunicodechar}
5 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\textlongS}{TS1}
6 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textlongS}{TS1}{115}
7 \newunicodechar{f}{\textlongS}

```



Many Unicode characters have native support in `xelatex` and `lualatex`, but not in `pdflatex`. Yet the latter has certain features (e.g., with respect to `microtype`) that others lack. The features of `makeindex` do not always equate to those in `xindy`. Those differences impact design choices.



Before 2018, some index styles excluded characters with macrons, e.g., `ā`. Even now, control sequences like `\=a` in the index create undocumented behavior when using `makeindex` and `gind.ist`, which changes the “actual” character from `@` to `=`. Since 2018, names like `Ghazāli` work properly due to new Unicode conventions. We allow for backward compatibility using the `iftex` package thus:

<sup>31</sup>As of release, most documents typeset with `latex` and `pdflatex` do not require explicit loading of either `inputenc` or `inputenx`.

<sup>32</sup>A diaeresis mark is one way to indicate an umlaut, a sound change. German originally used a superscript `e` over `a`, `o`, and `u`. The cursive form of `e` simplified to a diaeresis mark in the 1800s. A diaeresis mark also signals a diaeresis: reading a diphthong as two monophthongs.

```

1 \ifPDFTeX
2   \IfFileExists{utf8-2018.def}%
3     {\Name{Ghazāli}}{\Name{Ghazali}}%
4   \else\Name{Ghazāli}%
5 \fi

```



TeX macros that partition their arguments can break active Unicode characters. Consider the simple macro `\def\foo#1#2#3!{<#1#2><#3>}`. It takes three undelimited arguments and groups the first two, then the third:

Argument	Macro	Engine	Result
abc	<code>\foo abc!</code>	(any)	<code>&lt;ab&gt;&lt;c&gt;</code>
<code>{æ}bc</code>	<code>\foo {æ}bc!</code>	(any)	<code>&lt;æb&gt;&lt;c&gt;</code>
<code>\ae bc</code>	<code>\foo \ae bc!</code>	(any)	<code>&lt;æb&gt;&lt;c&gt;</code>
æbc	<code>\foo æbc!</code>	xelatex	<code>&lt;æb&gt;&lt;c&gt;</code>
æbc	<code>\foo æbc!</code>	lualatex	<code>&lt;æb&gt;&lt;c&gt;</code>
æbc	<code>\foo æbc!</code>	pdflatex	<code>&lt;æ&gt;&lt;bc&gt;</code>
æbc	<code>\foo æbc!</code>	latex	<code>&lt;æ&gt;&lt;bc&gt;</code>

The letter `a` is one argument. Since `{æ}` is in a group, it is one argument. The macro `\ae` also is one argument. Thus, the first two glyphs are grouped together in `#1#2` and `c` is left by itself in `#3`. Both `xelatex` and `lualatex` likewise treat the Unicode letter `æ` as one argument.

In `latex` and `pdflatex`, however, `æ` is an active Unicode control sequence that uses two arguments: `#1#2`. The tail of the input, `bc`, is crowded into `#3`. Any macro where this `#1#2` pair is divided into `#1` and `#2` will produce one of two errors: `Unicode char ...not set up for LaTeX` or `Argument of \UTFviii@two@octets has an extra }`.

**3.0** We test if `\Umathchar` is not defined. If so, we check if the leading token of the argument matches the start of an active Unicode control sequence: If `\@car<test>\@nil` is equal to `\@car ß\@nil` (page 78) we capitalize `#1#2`, otherwise just `#1`. Should `#1` be a protected macro or something that does not expand to a sequence of letters, we use alternate formatting and `\AltCaps` (Section 2.5.2).



A macro defined like `\edef\foo{\CapThis\Name{bar}}` will fail. However, `\CapThis\Name{bar}` can be an argument to a macro defined with `\edef` or `\xdef`.



L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X removes spaces between undelimited macro arguments, except the trailing argument. We use `\trim@spaces` to address this in `nameauth`. Explicit spacing macros change the results, but also require sorting with `\PretagName`. See also Sections 1.6 and 2.3.4, as well as Section 2.6.3.

Back to Section 1.2

### 2.11.3 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Engines

The following preamble snippet lets one build `nameauth` also with older TL versions. We do not load `iftex.sty` if it does not exist. We load the transitional packages when `iftex` is absent or older than 2019:<sup>33</sup>

```
1 \IfFileExists{iftex.sty}{\usepackage{iftex}}{}
2 \unless\ifdefined\RequireTUTeX
3   \usepackage{ifxetex}
4   \usepackage{ifluatex}
5   \usepackage{ifpdf}
6 \fi
```

Next we test for the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X engine and include packages accordingly. We could just include `inputenc` either way, but we are illustrating a point about testing. Some statements below should be modified, depending on one's workflow.

```
7 \newif\ifDoTikZ                                % Perhaps not needed
8 \ifxetex
9   \usepackage{fontspec}
10  \usepackage{polyglossia}
11  \setdefaultlanguage{american}                 % Use own language
12  \usepackage{tikz}
13  \DoTikZtrue                                   % Perhaps not needed
14 \else
15   \ifluatex
16     \ifpdf
17       \usepackage{fontspec}
18       \usepackage{polyglossia}
19       \setdefaultlanguage{american}             % Use own language
20       \usepackage{tikz}
21       \DoTikZtrue                               % Perhaps not needed
22     \else
23       \IfFileExists{utf8-2018.def}{}
24       {\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}}
25       \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}
26       \usepackage[american]{babel}             % Use own language
27       \usepackage{lmodern}
28       % Perhaps add \usepackage{tikz}
29     \fi
30   \else
31     \IfFileExists{utf8-2018.def}{}
32     {\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}}
33     \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}
34     \usepackage[american]{babel}               % Use own language
35     \usepackage{lmodern}
36     \ifpdf                                     % Perhaps not needed
37       \usepackage{tikz}
38       \DoTikZtrue                             % Perhaps not needed
39     \fi
40   \fi
41 \fi
```

---

<sup>33</sup>A copy of this example is in `examples.tex`, collocated with this manual.



For the sake of comparing dvi viewers `xdvi`, `yap`, and others, we load `tikz` only when making a pdf because some dvi viewers crash otherwise. This may be wholly unnecessary in a `dvips` workflow or the like. With `fontspec`, Latin Modern is the default. If we only make pdf documents, the test simplifies to testing for `\Umathchar`, then loading either `fontspec` (success) or `fontenc` (failure).

In the body text we can use something like the test below for doing pdf things

```
\ifDoTikZ
  doing \texttt{pdf} things\else
  doing \texttt{dvi} things\fi
```

The following equivalent conditional statements can help a macro or just the body text to work under multiple engines:

```
1 \ifxetex xelatex%
2 \else
3   \ifluatex
4     \ifpdf lualatex (pdf)%
5     \else lualatex (dvi)%
6     \fi
7   \else
8     \ifpdf pdflatex%
9     \else latex (dvi)%
10    \fi
11  \fi
12 \fi

1 \unless\ifxetex
2   \unless\ifluatex
3     \ifpdf pdflatex%
4     \else latex (dvi)%
5     \fi
6   \else
7     \ifpdf lualatex (pdf)%
8     \else lualatex (dvi)%
9     \fi
10  \fi
11 \else xelatex%
12 \fi
```

Back to Section [1.2](#)

*This space is intentionally left blank.*

## 3 Implementation

### 3.1 Flags and Registers

The flags below are grouped according to function. We begin with flow control

#### Who Called Me?

Various macros use these flags to protect against stack overflows or choose the right output.

```
1 \newif\if@nameauth@InAKA
2 \newif\if@nameauth@InName
3 \newif\if@nameauth@Xref
```

#### Core Macro Locks

The macros `\@nameauth@Name` and `\AKA`, with some auxiliary macros, process names in a “locked” state to avoid a stack overflow. The `BigLock` always locks the macros, preventing execution. See also Sections 2.10.2 and 2.10.3.

```
4 \newif\if@nameauth@Lock
5 \newif\if@nameauth@BigLock
6 \newif\if@nameauth@InHook
```

#### Indexing

The indexing flags permit or prevent indexing and tags. `\IndexActive` and `\IndexInactive` or the `index` and `noindex` options toggle the first flag; `\SkipIndex` toggles the second. `\JustIndex` toggles the third, which makes the core naming engine act like a call to `\IndexName`:

```
7 \newif\if@nameauth@DoIndex
8 \newif\if@nameauth@SkipIndex
9 \newif\if@nameauth@JustIndex
```

The `pretag` and `nopretag` options toggle the flag below, which allows or prevents the insertion of index sort keys.

```
10 \newif\if@nameauth@Pretag
```

This flag determines whether `\IndexRef` creates a *see* reference or a *see also* reference.

```
11 \newif\if@nameauth@SeeAlso
```

#### Formatting

`\NamesActive` and `\NamesInactive`, with the `mainmatter` and `frontmatter` options, toggle formatting hooks via `\if@nameauth@MainFormat`. `\if@nameauth@AKAFormat` permits `\AKA` to call the first-use hooks once.

```
12 \newif\if@nameauth@MainFormat
13 \newif\if@nameauth@AKAFormat
```

The next flag works with `\LocalNames` and `\GlobalNames`.

```
14 \newif\if@nameauth@LocalNames
```

These two flags are used only for backward compatibility. The first broadly determines how per-name flags are reset, while the second affects the behavior of `\JustIndex`.

```
15 \newif\if@nameauth@OldReset
16 \newif\if@nameauth@OldPass
```

These two flags trigger `\ForgetName` and `\SubvertName` within `\@nameauth@Name`.

```
17 \newif\if@nameauth@Forget
18 \newif\if@nameauth@Subvert
```

`\if@nameauth@FirstFormat` triggers the first-use hooks to be called; otherwise the second-use hooks are called. Additionally, `\if@nameauth@AlwaysFormat` forces this true, except when `\if@nameauth@AKAFormat` is false.

```
19 \newif\if@nameauth@FirstFormat
20 \newif\if@nameauth@AlwaysFormat
```

Next we move from general flow control to specific modification of name forms.

## Affix Commas

The `comma` and `nocomma` options toggle the first flag value below. `\ShowComma` and `\NoComma` respectively toggle the second and third.

```
21 \newif\if@nameauth@AlwaysComma
22 \newif\if@nameauth@ShowComma
23 \newif\if@nameauth@NoComma
```

## Name Breaking

`\KeepAffix` toggles the first flag below, while `\KeepName` toggles the second. Both affect the use of non-breaking spaces in the text.

```
24 \newif\if@nameauth@NBSP
25 \newif\if@nameauth@NBSPX
```

## Detect Punctuation

This Boolean value is used to prevent double full stops at the end of a name in the text.

```
26 \newif\if@nameauth@Punct
```

## Long and Short Names

`\if@nameauth@FullName` is true for a long name reference. `\if@nameauth@FirstName` disables full-name references and causes only Western forenames to be displayed. The default is to reset both globally on a per-name basis.

`\if@nameauth@AltAKA` is toggled respectively by `\AKA` and `\AKA*` to print a longer or shorter name. `\if@nameauth@OldAKA` forces the pre-3.0 behavior of `\AKA*`.

`\if@nameauth@ShortSNN` is used with `\DropAffix` to suppress the affix of a Western name. `\if@nameauth@EastFN` toggles the forced printing of Eastern forenames.

```
27 \newif\if@nameauth@FullName
28 \newif\if@nameauth@FirstName
29 \newif\if@nameauth@AltAKA
30 \newif\if@nameauth@OldAKA
31 \newif\if@nameauth@ShortSNN
32 \newif\if@nameauth@EastFN
```

## Eastern Names

The next flags values govern name reversing and full surname capitalization. The first of each pair is a global state. The second of each pair is an individual state.

```
33 \newif\if@nameauth@RevAll
34 \newif\if@nameauth@RevThis
35 \newif\if@nameauth@AllCaps
36 \newif\if@nameauth@AllThis
```

## Last-Comma-First

This pair of flags deals with Western names reordered in a list according to surname.

```
37 \newif\if@nameauth@RevAllComma
38 \newif\if@nameauth@RevThisComma
```

## Cap First Letter and Format

The next flags deal with first-letter capitalization. `\CapThis` sets the first Boolean value. The second is triggered by `\@nameauth@UTFtest` when it encounters an active Unicode character. The third is a fallback triggered by `\AccentCapThis`. The fourth disables `\CapThis` for alternate formatting. The fifth toggles alternate formatting.

```
39 \newif\if@nameauth@DoCaps
40 \newif\if@nameauth@UTF
41 \newif\if@nameauth@Accent
42 \newif\if@nameauth@AltFormat
43 \newif\if@nameauth@DoAlt
```

## Warning Levels

This flag controls how many warnings you get. Defaults to few warnings. Verbose gives you plenty of warnings about cross-references in the index.

```
44 \newif\if@nameauth@Verbose
```

## Name Argument Token Registers

`\@nameauth@toksa` These three token registers contain the current values of the name arguments passed to  
`\@nameauth@toksb` `\Name`, its variants, and the cross-reference arguments of `\AKA`. Users can access them  
`\@nameauth@toksc` especially in formatting hooks.

```
45 \newtoks\@nameauth@toksa%
46 \newtoks\@nameauth@toksb%
47 \newtoks\@nameauth@toksc%
```

These three token registers contain the current values of the name arguments in each line of the `nameauth` environment.

```
48 \newtoks\@nameauth@etoksb%
49 \newtoks\@nameauth@etoksc%
50 \newtoks\@nameauth@etoksd%
```

## 3.2 Hooks

`\NamesFormat` Post-process “first” instance of final complete name form in text. See Sections 2.4 and 2.10.1f. Called when both `\@nameauth@MainFormat` and `\@nameauth@FirstFormat` are true.

```
51 \newcommand*\NamesFormat{}
```

`\MainNameHook` Post-process subsequent instance of final complete name form in main-matter text. See Sections 2.4 and 2.10.1f. Called when `\@nameauth@MainFormat` is true and the Boolean flag `\@nameauth@FirstFormat` is false.

```
52 \newcommand*\MainNameHook{}
```

`\FrontNamesFormat` Post-process “first” instance of final complete name form in front-matter text. Called when `\@nameauth@MainFormat` is false and `\@nameauth@FirstFormat` is true.

```
53 \newcommand*\FrontNamesFormat{}
```

`\FrontNameHook` Post-process subsequent instance of final complete name form in front-matter text. Called when `\@nameauth@MainFormat` is false and `\@nameauth@FirstFormat` is false.

```
54 \newcommand*\FrontNameHook{}
```

`\NameauthName` The last three hooks usually point to `\@nameauth@Name`. See Section 2.10.4.

```
55 \newcommand*\NameauthName{\@nameauth@Name}
```

`\NameauthLName` Customization hook called after `\@nameauth@FullName` is set true. See Section 2.10.4.

```
56 \newcommand*\NameauthLName{\@nameauth@Name}
```

`\NameauthFName` Customization hook called after `\@nameauth@FirstName` is set true. See Section 2.10.4.

```
57 \newcommand*\NameauthFName{\@nameauth@Name}
```

### 3.3 Package Options

The following package options interact with many of the prior Boolean values.

```
58 \DeclareOption{comma}{\@nameauth@AlwaysCommatrue}
59 \DeclareOption{nocomma}{\@nameauth@AlwaysCommafalse}
60 \DeclareOption{mainmatter}{\@nameauth@MainFormattrue}
61 \DeclareOption{frontmatter}{\@nameauth@MainFormatfalse}
62 \DeclareOption{formatAKA}{\@nameauth@AKAFormattrue}
63 \DeclareOption{oldAKA}{\@nameauth@OldAKAtrue}
64 \DeclareOption{oldreset}{\@nameauth@OldResettrue}
65 \DeclareOption{oldpass}{\@nameauth@OldPasstrue}
66 \DeclareOption{index}{\@nameauth@DoIndextrue}
67 \DeclareOption{noindex}{\@nameauth@DoIndexfalse}
68 \DeclareOption{pretag}{\@nameauth@Pretagtrue}
69 \DeclareOption{nopretag}{\@nameauth@Pretagfalse}
70 \DeclareOption{allcaps}{\@nameauth@AllCapstrue}
71 \DeclareOption{normalcaps}{\@nameauth@AllCapsfalse}
72 \DeclareOption{allreversed}%
73   {\@nameauth@RevAlltrue\@nameauth@RevAllCommafalse}
74 \DeclareOption{allrevcomma}%
75   {\@nameauth@RevAllfalse\@nameauth@RevAllCommatrue}
76 \DeclareOption{notreversed}%
77   {\@nameauth@RevAllfalse\@nameauth@RevAllCommafalse}
78 \DeclareOption{alwaysformat}{\@nameauth@AlwaysFormattrue}
79 \DeclareOption{smallcaps}{\renewcommand*\NamesFormat{\scshape}}
80 \DeclareOption{italic}{\renewcommand*\NamesFormat{\itshape}}
81 \DeclareOption{boldface}{\renewcommand*\NamesFormat{\bfseries}}
82 \DeclareOption{noformat}{\renewcommand*\NamesFormat{}}
83 \DeclareOption{verbose}{\@nameauth@Verbosetrue}
84 \DeclareOption{altformat}{%
85   \@nameauth@AltFormattrue\@nameauth@DoAlttrue}
86 \ExecuteOptions%
87   {nocomma,mainmatter,index,pretag,%
88     normalcaps,notreversed,noformat}
89 \ProcessOptions\relax
```

Now we load the required packages. They facilitate the first/subsequent name uses, the parsing of arguments, and the implementation of starred forms.

```
90 \RequirePackage{etoolbox}
91 \RequirePackage{suffix}
92 \RequirePackage{trimspaces}
93 \RequirePackage{xargs}
```

The `etoolbox` package is essential for processing name control sequences. Using `xargs` allows the optional arguments to work. Using `suffix` facilitated the starred form of macros. Finally, `trimspaces` helps the fault tolerance of name arguments.

*This space is intentionally left blank.*

### 3.4 Internal Macros

#### Name Control Sequence: Who Am I?

`\@nameauth@Clean` Thanks to [Heiko Oberdiek](#), this macro produces a “sanitized” string used to make a (hopefully) unique control sequence for a name. We can test the existence of that control string to determine first occurrences of a name or cross-reference.

```
94 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Clean[1]
95   {\expandafter\zap@space\detokenize{#1} \@empty}
```

#### Parsing: Root and Suffix

`\@nameauth@Root` The following two macros return everything before a comma in  $\langle SNN \rangle$ .

```
96 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Root[1]{\@nameauth@@Root#1,\\}
```

`\@nameauth@@Root` Throw out the comma and suffix, return the radix.

```
97 \def\@nameauth@@Root#1,#2\\{\trim@spaces{#1}}
```

`\@nameauth@TrimTag` The following two macros return everything before a vertical bar (|) in an index tag.

```
98 \newcommand*\@nameauth@TrimTag[1]{\@nameauth@@TrimTag#1|\\}
```

`\@nameauth@@TrimTag` Throw out the bar and suffix, return the radix.

```
99 \def\@nameauth@@TrimTag#1|#2\\{#1}
```

`\@nameauth@Suffix` The following two macros parse  $\langle SNN \rangle$  into a radix and a comma-delimited suffix, returning only the suffix after a comma in the argument, or nothing.

```
100 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Suffix[1]{\@nameauth@@Suffix#1,,\\}
```

`\@nameauth@@Suffix` Throw out the radix; return the suffix with no leading spaces. We use this when printing the suffix.

```
101 \def\@nameauth@@Suffix#1,#2,#3\\%
102   {\ifx\\#2\\ \@empty\else\trim@spaces{#2}\fi}
```

`\@nameauth@GetSuff` The following two macros just grab the suffix for testing if the first non-space character is an active character from `inputenc`.

```
103 \newcommand*\@nameauth@GetSuff[1]{\@nameauth@@GetSuff#1,,\\}
```

`\@nameauth@@GetSuff` Throw out the radix; return the suffix.

```
104 \def\@nameauth@@GetSuff#1,#2,#3\\{#2}
```

#### Parsing: Capitalization

`\@nameauth@TestToks` Test if the leading token is the same as the leading token of an active Unicode character, using an *Esszett* (ß) as the control. We only run this macro if we are in the `inputenc` regime.

```
105 \newcommand*\@nameauth@TestToks[1]
106 {%
107   \toks@\expandafter{\@car#1\@nil}%
108   \edef\one{\the\toks@}%
109   \toks@\expandafter{\@carß\@nil}%
110   \edef\two{\the\toks@}%
111   \ifx\one\two\@nameauth@UTFtrue\else\@nameauth@UTFfalse\fi
112 }
```

`\@nameauth@UTFtest` Before we attempt at capitalizing anything, we need to determine if we are running under `xelatex` or `lualatex` by testing for `\Umathchar`. Then we see if `inputenc` is loaded. We set up the comparison and pass off to `\@nameauth@TestToks`.

```

113 \newcommand*\@nameauth@UTFtest[1]
114 {%
115   \def\testarg{#1}%
116   \ifdefined\Umathchar
117     \@nameauth@UTFfalse%
118   \else
119     \ifdefined\UTFviii@two@octets
120       \if@nameauth@Accent
121         \@nameauth@UTFtrue\@nameauth@Accentfalse%
122       \else
123         \expandafter\@nameauth@TestToks\expandafter{\testarg}%
124       \fi
125     \else
126       \@nameauth@UTFfalse%
127     \fi
128   \fi
129 }

```

`\@nameauth@UTFtestS` This test is like the one above, but a special case when we have a suffix. We have to do a bit more in the way of expansion to get the comparison to work properly. Moreover, we only use this when the regular suffix macro is not `\@empty`.

```

130 \newcommand*\@nameauth@UTFtestS[1]
131 {%
132   \let\ex\expandafter%
133   \ex\def\ex\testarg\ex{\@nameauth@GetSuff{#1}}%
134   \ex\toks@\ex\ex\ex{\testarg}%
135   \ex\def\ex\test@rg\ex{\the\toks@}%
136   \ifdefined\Umathchar
137     \@nameauth@UTFfalse%
138   \else
139     \ifdefined\UTFviii@two@octets
140       \if@nameauth@Accent
141         \@nameauth@UTFtrue\@nameauth@Accentfalse%
142       \else
143         \expandafter\@nameauth@TestToks\expandafter{\test@rg}%
144       \fi
145     \else
146       \@nameauth@UTFfalse%
147     \fi
148   \fi
149 }

```

`\@nameauth@Cap` The following two macros cap the first letter of the argument.

```

150 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Cap[1]{\@nameauth@C@p#1\}

```

`\@nameauth@C@p` Helper macro for the one above.

```

151 \def\@nameauth@C@p#1#2\%
152   {\expandafter\trim@spaces\expandafter{\MakeUppercase{#1}#2}}

```

`\@nameauth@CapUTF` The following two macros cap the first active Unicode letter under `inputenc`.

```

153 \newcommand*\@nameauth@CapUTF[1]{\@nameauth@C@pUTF#1\}

```

`\@nameauth@C@pUTF` Helper macro for the one above.

```

154 \def\@nameauth@C@pUTF#1#2#3\%
155   {\expandafter\trim@spaces\expandafter{\MakeUppercase{#1#2#3}}}
```

## Parsing: Punctuation Detection

`\@nameauth@TestDot` This macro, based on a snippet by [Uwe Lueck](#), checks for a period at the end of its argument. It determines whether we need to call `\@nameauth@CheckDot` below.

```

156 \newcommand*\@nameauth@TestDot[1]
157 {%
158   \def\TestDot##1.\TestEnd##2\{\TestPunct{##2}}%
159   \def\TestPunct##1{%
160     \ifx\TestPunct##1\TestPunct%
161     \else
162       \@nameauth@Puncttrue%
163     \fi
164   }%
165   \@nameauth@Punctfalse%
166   \TestDot#1\TestEnd.\TestEnd\%
167 }
```

`\@nameauth@CheckDot` We assume that `\expandafter` precedes the invocation of `\@nameauth@CheckDot`, which only is called if the terminal character of the input is a period. We evaluate the lookahead `\@token` while keeping it on the list of input tokens.

```

168 \newcommand*\@nameauth@CheckDot%
169   {\futurelet\@token\@nameauth@EvalDot}
```

`\@nameauth@EvalDot` If `\@token` is a full stop, we gobble the token.

```

170 \newcommand*\@nameauth@EvalDot%
171 {%
172   \let\@period=.%
173   \ifx\@token\@period\expandafter\@gobble \fi
174 }
```

## Error Detection

`\@nameauth@Error` One can cause nameauth to halt with an error by leaving a required name argument empty, providing an argument that expands to empty, or creating an empty root within a root/suffix pair.

```

175 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Error[2]
176 {%
177   \edef\msg{#2 SNN arg empty}%
178   \edef\msgb{#2 SNN arg malformed}%
179   \protected@edef\testname{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
180   \protected@edef\testroot{\@nameauth@Root{#1}}%
181   \ifx\testname\@empty
182     \PackageError{nameauth}{\msg}%
183   \fi
184   \ifx\testroot\@empty
185     \PackageError{nameauth}{\msgb}%
186   \fi
187 }
```



## Core Name Engine

`\@nameauth@Name` Here is the heart of the package. Marc van Dongen provided the original basic structure. Parsing, indexing, and formatting are more discrete than in earlier versions.

```
188 \newcommandx*\@nameauth@Name[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
189 {%
```

Both `\@nameauth@Name` and `\AKA` engage the lock below, preventing a stack overflow. Tell the formatting mechanism that it is being called from `\@nameauth@Name`.

```
190 \if@nameauth@BigLock\@nameauth@Locktrue\fi
191 \unless\if@nameauth@Lock
192 \@nameauth@Locktrue%
193 \@nameauth@InNametrue%
```

Test for malformed input.

```
194 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\@nameauth@name}%
```

If we use `\JustIndex` then skip everything else. The `oldpass` option restores what we did before version 3.3, where we locally reset `\@nameauth@JustIndexfalse` and were done. Now, however, the default is a global reset to avoid undocumented behavior.

```
195 \if@nameauth@JustIndex
196 \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
197 \if@nameauth@OldPass
198 \@nameauth@JustIndexfalse%
199 \else
200 \if@nameauth@OldReset
201 \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
202 \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
203 \@nameauth@JustIndexfalse%
204 \else
205 \global\@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
206 \global\@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
207 \global\@nameauth@JustIndexfalse%
208 \fi
209 \fi
210 \else
```

Delete/create name cseq if directed. If the delete flag is set, the create flag is ignored. Ensure that names are printed in horizontal mode. Wrap the name with two index entries in case a page break occurs between name elements.

```
211 \if@nameauth@Forget
212 \ForgetName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
213 \else
214 \if@nameauth@Subvert
215 \SubvertName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
216 \fi
217 \fi
218 \leavevmode\hbox{}%
219 \unless\if@nameauth@SkipIndex\IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]\fi
220 \if@nameauth@MainFormat
221 \@nameauth@Parse[#1]{#2}[#3]{!MN}%
222 \else
223 \@nameauth@Parse[#1]{#2}[#3]{!NF}%
224 \fi
225 \unless\if@nameauth@SkipIndex\IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]\fi
```

Reset all the “per name” Boolean values. The default is global.

```
226 \if@nameauth@OldReset
227 \@nameauth@SkipIndexfalse%
```

```

228      \@nameauth@Forgetfalse%
229      \@nameauth@Subvertfalse%
230      \@nameauth@NBSPfalse%
231      \@nameauth@NBSPXfalse%
232      \@nameauth@DoCapsfalse%
233      \@nameauth@Accentfalse%
234      \@nameauth@AllThisfalse%
235      \@nameauth@ShowCommafalse%
236      \@nameauth@NoCommafalse%
237      \@nameauth@RevThisfalse%
238      \@nameauth@RevThisCommafalse%
239      \@nameauth@ShortSNNfalse%
240      \@nameauth@EastFNfalse%
241      \else
242      \global\@nameauth@SkipIndexfalse%
243      \global\@nameauth@Forgetfalse%
244      \global\@nameauth@Subvertfalse%
245      \global\@nameauth@NBSPfalse%
246      \global\@nameauth@NBSPXfalse%
247      \global\@nameauth@DoCapsfalse%
248      \global\@nameauth@Accentfalse%
249      \global\@nameauth@AllThisfalse%
250      \global\@nameauth@ShowCommafalse%
251      \global\@nameauth@NoCommafalse%
252      \global\@nameauth@RevThisfalse%
253      \global\@nameauth@RevThisCommafalse%
254      \global\@nameauth@ShortSNNfalse%
255      \global\@nameauth@EastFNfalse%
256      \fi
257      \fi
258      \@nameauth@Lockfalse%
259      \@nameauth@InNamefalse%

```

Close the “locked” branch.

```

260      \fi

```

Call the full stop detection.

```

261      \if@nameauth@Punct\expandafter\@nameauth@CheckDot\fi
262  }

```

**\@nameauth@Parse** Parse and print a name in the text. The final required argument tells us which naming system we are in (Section 1.5). Both \@nameauth@Name and \@nameauth@AKA call this parser.

```

263 \newcommandx*\@nameauth@Parse[4][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
264 {%
265   \if@nameauth@BigLock\@nameauth@Lockfalse\fi
266   \if@nameauth@Lock
267     \let\ex\expandafter%

```

We want these arguments to expand to \@empty (or not) when we test them.

```

268   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
269   \protected@edef\rootb{\@nameauth@Root{#2}}%
270   \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
271   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%

```

If global caps. reversing, and commas are true, set the local flags true.

```
272 \if@nameauth@AllCaps\@nameauth@AllThistrue\fi
273 \if@nameauth@RevAll\@nameauth@RevThistrue\fi
274 \if@nameauth@RevAllComma\@nameauth@RevThisCommatrue\fi
```

Make (usually) unique control sequence values from the name arguments.

```
275 \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
276 \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
277 \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
```

Make token register copies of the current name args to be available for the hook macros.

```
278 \@nameauth@toksa\expandafter{#1}%
279 \@nameauth@toksb\expandafter{#2}%
280 \@nameauth@toksc\expandafter{#3}%
```

Implement capitalization on demand in the body text if not in Continental mode.

```
281 \if@nameauth@DoCaps
282 \let\carga\arga%
283 \let\crootb\rootb%
284 \let\csuffb\suffb%
285 \let\cargc\argc%
286 \unless\if@nameauth@AltFormat
```

We test the first optarg for active Unicode characters. Then we capitalize the first letter.

```
287 \unless\ifx\arga\@empty
288 \def\test{#1}%
289 \ex\@nameauth@UTFtest\ex{\test}%
290 \if@nameauth@UTF
291 \ex\def\ex\carga\ex{\ex\@nameauth@CapUTF\ex{\test}}%
292 \else
293 \ex\def\ex\carga\ex{\ex\@nameauth@Cap\ex{\test}}%
294 \fi
295 \fi
```

We test the root surname for active Unicode characters. Then we capitalize the first letter.

```
296 \def\test{#2}%
297 \ex\@nameauth@UTFtest\ex{\test}%
298 \if@nameauth@UTF
299 \ex\def\ex\crootb\ex{\ex\@nameauth@CapUTF\ex{\rootb}}%
300 \else
301 \ex\def\ex\crootb\ex{\ex\@nameauth@Cap\ex{\rootb}}%
302 \fi
```

We test the suffix for active Unicode characters. Then we capitalize the first letter.

```
303 \unless\ifx\suffb\@empty
304 \def\test{#2}%
305 \ex\@nameauth@UTFtestS\ex{\test}%
306 \protected@edef\test{\@nameauth@GetSuff{#2}}%
307 \if@nameauth@UTF
308 \protected@edef\test{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
309 \ex\def\ex\csuffb\ex{\ex\@nameauth@CapUTF\ex{\test}}%
310 \else
311 \edef\test{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
312 \ex\def\ex\csuffb\ex{\ex\@nameauth@Cap\ex{\test}}%
313 \fi
314 \fi
```

We test the final optarg for active Unicode characters. Then we capitalize the first letter.

```
315 \unless\ifx\argc\@empty
```

```

316         \def\test{#3}%
317         \ex\@nameauth@UTFtest\ex{\test}%
318         \if@nameauth@UTF
319             \ex\def\ex\cargc\ex{\ex\@nameauth@CapUTF\ex{\test}}%
320         \else
321             \ex\def\ex\cargc\ex{\ex\@nameauth@Cap\ex{\test}}%
322         \fi
323     \fi
324 \fi
325 \let\arga\carga%
326 \let\rootb\crootb%
327 \let\suffb\csuffb%
328 \let\argc\cargc%
329 \fi

```

We capitalize the entire surname when desired; different from above.

```

330     \if@nameauth@AllThis
331         \protected@edef\rootb{\MakeUppercase{\@nameauth@Root{#2}}}%
332     \fi

```

Use non-breaking spaces and commas as desired.

```

333     \edef\Space{\space}%
334     \edef\SpaceX{\space}%
335     \if@nameauth@NBSP\edef\Space{\nobreakspace}\fi
336     \if@nameauth@NBSPX\edef\SpaceX{\nobreakspace}\fi
337     \unless\ifx\arga\@empty
338         \if@nameauth@AlwaysComma
339             \edef\Space{,\space}%
340             \if@nameauth@NBSP\edef\Space{,\nobreakspace}\fi
341         \fi
342         \if@nameauth@ShowComma
343             \edef\Space{,\space}%
344             \if@nameauth@NBSP\edef\Space{,\nobreakspace}\fi
345         \fi
346         \if@nameauth@NoComma
347             \edef\Space{\space}%
348             \if@nameauth@NBSP\edef\Space{\nobreakspace}\fi
349         \fi
350     \fi

```

We parse names by attaching “meaning” to patterns of macro arguments primarily via `\FNN` and `\SNN`. Then we call the name printing macros, based on the optional arguments.

```

351     \let\SNN\rootb%
352     \ifx\arga\@empty
353         \ifx\argc\@empty

```

When `\arga`, `\argc`, and `\suffb` are empty, we have a mononym. When `\suffb` is not empty, we have a “native” Eastern name or non-Western name.

```

354         \let\FNN\suffb%
355         \let\SNN\rootb%
356         \@nameauth@NonWest{\csb#4}%
357     \else

```

When `\arga` and `\suffb` are empty, but `\argc` is not, we have the older syntax. When `\arga` is empty, but `\argc` and `\suffb` are not, we have alternate names for non-Western names.

```

358         \ifx\suffb\@empty
359             \let\FNN\argc%
360             \let\SNN\rootb%

```

```

361         \@nameauth@NonWest{\csbc#4}%
362     \else
363         \let\FNN\argc%
364         \let\SNN\rootb%
365         \@nameauth@NonWest{\csb#4}%
366     \fi
367 \fi
368 \else

```

When `\arga` is not empty, we have either a Western name or a “non-native” Eastern name. When `\argc` is not empty, we use alternate names. When `\suffb` is not empty we use suffixed forms.

```

369     \ifx\argc@empty
370         \let\FNN\argc%
371     \else
372         \let\FNN\argc%
373     \fi
374     \unless\ifx\suffb@empty
375         \def\SNN{\rootb\Space\suffb}%
376         \if@nameauth@ShortSNN\let\SNN\rootb\fi
377     \fi
378     \@nameauth@West{\csab#4}%
379 \fi
380 \fi
381 }

```

`\@nameauth@NonWest` Print non-Western names from `\@nameauth@name` and `\AKA`. We inherit internal macros from the parser and do nothing apart from the locked state.

```

382 \newcommand*\@nameauth@NonWest[1]
383 {%
384     \if@nameauth@BigLock\@nameauth@Lockfalse\fi
385     \if@nameauth@Lock
386         \unless\ifcsname#1\endcsname
387             \@nameauth@FirstFormattrue%
388         \fi
389     \if@nameauth@InAKA
390         \if@nameauth@AltAKA
391             \if@nameauth@OldAKA\@nameauth@EastFNtrue\fi
392             \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
393             \@nameauth@FirstNametrue%
394         \else
395             \@nameauth@FullNametrue%
396             \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
397         \fi
398     \else
399         \unless\ifcsname#1\endcsname
400             \@nameauth@FullNametrue%
401             \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
402         \fi
403     \fi
404     \if@nameauth@FirstName
405         \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
406     \fi
407     \ifx\FNN@empty
408         \@nameauth@Hook{\SNN}%
409     \else
410         \if@nameauth@FullName

```

```

411         \if@nameauth@RevThis
412         \@nameauth@Hook{\FNN\Space\SNN}%
413     \else
414         \@nameauth@Hook{\SNN\Space\FNN}%
415     \fi
416 \else
417     \if@nameauth@FirstName
418         \if@nameauth@EastFN
419             \@nameauth@Hook{\FNN}%
420         \else
421             \@nameauth@Hook{\SNN}%
422         \fi
423     \else
424         \@nameauth@Hook{\SNN}%
425     \fi
426 \fi
427 \fi
428 \unless\ifcsname#1\endcsname
429     \unless\if@nameauth@InAKA\csgdef{#1}{}\fi
430 \fi

```

We have to reset these flags here because both the naming and cross-referencing macros use the parser.

```

431     \if@nameauth@OldReset
432     \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
433     \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
434 \else
435     \global\@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
436     \global\@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
437 \fi
438 \fi
439 }

```

`\@nameauth@West` Print Western names and “non-native” Eastern names from `\@nameauth@name` and `\AKA`. We inherit internal macros from the parser and do nothing apart from the locked state.

```

440 \newcommand*\@nameauth@West[1]
441 {%
442     \if@nameauth@BigLock\@nameauth@Lockfalse\fi
443     \if@nameauth@Lock
444         \unless\ifcsname#1\endcsname
445             \@nameauth@FirstFormattrue%
446         \fi
447         \if@nameauth@InAKA
448             \if@nameauth@AltAKA
449                 \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
450                 \@nameauth@FirstNametrue%
451             \else
452                 \@nameauth@FullNametrue%
453                 \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
454             \fi
455         \else
456             \unless\ifcsname#1\endcsname
457                 \@nameauth@FullNametrue%
458                 \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
459             \fi
460         \fi
461         \if@nameauth@FirstName

```

```

462     \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
463 \fi
464 \if@nameauth@FullName
465     \if@nameauth@RevThis
466         \@nameauth@Hook{\SNN\SpaceX\FNN}%
467     \else
468         \if@nameauth@RevThisComma
469             \edef\RevSpace{,\SpaceX}%
470             \@nameauth@Hook{\SNN\RevSpace\FNN}%
471         \else
472             \@nameauth@Hook{\FNN\SpaceX\SNN}%
473         \fi
474     \fi
475 \else
476     \if@nameauth@FirstName
477         \@nameauth@Hook{\FNN}%
478     \else
479         \@nameauth@Hook{\rootb}%
480     \fi
481 \fi
482 \unless\ifcsname#1\endcsname
483     \unless\if@nameauth@InAKA\csgdef{#1}{}\fi
484 \fi

```

We have to reset these flags here because both the naming and cross-referencing macros use the parser.

```

485     \if@nameauth@OldReset
486         \@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
487         \@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
488     \else
489         \global\@nameauth@FullNamefalse%
490         \global\@nameauth@FirstNamefalse%
491     \fi
492 \fi
493 }

```

## Format Hook Dispatcher

**\@nameauth@Hook** Flags help the dispatcher invoke the correct formatting hooks. The flags control which hook is called (first / subsequent use, name type). The first set of tests handles formatting within \AKA. The second set of tests handles regular name formatting.

```

494 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Hook[1]
495 {%
496     \if@nameauth@BigLock\@nameauth@Lockfalse\fi
497     \if@nameauth@Lock
498         \@nameauth@InHooktrue%
499         \protected@edef\test{#1}%
500         \expandafter\@nameauth@TestDot\expandafter{\test}%
501         \if@nameauth@InAKA
502             \if@nameauth@AlwaysFormat
503                 \@nameauth@FirstFormattrue%
504             \else
505                 \unless\if@nameauth@AKAFormat
506                     \@nameauth@FirstFormatfalse\fi
507             \fi
508         \if@nameauth@MainFormat
509             \if@nameauth@FirstFormat

```

```

510         \bgroup\NamesFormat{#1}\egroup%
511     \else
512         \bgroup\MainNameHook{#1}\egroup%
513     \fi
514 \else
515     \if@nameauth@FirstFormat
516         \bgroup\FrontNamesFormat{#1}\egroup%
517     \else
518         \bgroup\FrontNameHook{#1}\egroup%
519     \fi
520 \fi
521 \else
522     \if@nameauth@AlwaysFormat
523         \@nameauth@FirstFormattrue%
524     \fi
525     \if@nameauth@MainFormat
526         \if@nameauth@FirstFormat
527             \bgroup\NamesFormat{#1}\egroup%
528         \else
529             \bgroup\MainNameHook{#1}\egroup%
530         \fi
531     \else
532         \if@nameauth@FirstFormat
533             \bgroup\FrontNamesFormat{#1}\egroup%
534         \else
535             \bgroup\FrontNameHook{#1}\egroup%
536         \fi
537     \fi
538 \fi

```

We have to reset this flag here because both the naming and cross-referencing macros use the parser.

```

539     \if@nameauth@OldReset
540         \@nameauth@FirstFormatfalse%
541     \else
542         \global\@nameauth@FirstFormatfalse%
543     \fi
544     \@nameauth@InHookfalse%
545 \fi
546 }

```

## Indexing Internals

`\@nameauth@Index` If the indexing flag is true, create an index entry, otherwise do nothing. Add tags automatically if they exist.

```

547 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Index[2]
548 {%
549     \let\ex\expandafter%
550     \if@nameauth@DoIndex
551         \ifcsname#1!TAG\endcsname
552             \protected@edef\Tag{\csname#1!TAG\endcsname}%
553             \ex\def\ex\ShortTag\ex{\ex\@nameauth@TrimTag\ex{\Tag}}%
554         \ifcsname#1!PRE\endcsname
555             \protected@edef\Pre{\csname#1!PRE\endcsname}%
556         \if@nameauth@Xref
557             \protected@edef\Entry{\Pre#2\ShortTag}%
558         \else

```



```

559         \protected@edef\Entry{\Pre#2\Tag}%
560     \fi
561 \else
562     \if@nameauth@Xref
563         \protected@edef\Entry{#2\ShortTag}%
564     \else
565         \protected@edef\Entry{#2\Tag}%
566     \fi
567 \fi
568 \else
569     \ifcsname#1!PRE\endcsname
570         \protected@edef\Pre{\csname#1!PRE\endcsname}%
571         \protected@edef\Entry{\Pre#2}%
572     \else
573         \protected@edef\Entry{#2}%
574     \fi
575 \fi
576 \ex\index\ex{\Entry}%
577 \fi
578 }

```

`\@nameauth@Actual` This sets the “actual” character used by nameauth for index sorting.

```
579 \newcommand*\@nameauth@Actual{@}
```

## Debugging Help

`\@nameauth@Debug` This Swiss-army knife for debugging shows name control sequence patterns, full index entries with tags, and short index entries with just the name. Other macros call it to get the desired info. We set up a local scope, redefine `\index` to print an argument in the text, force indexing to occur, and ignore whether we are working with xrefs.

```

580 \newcommandx*\@nameauth@Debug[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
581 {%
582     \bgroup%
583     \def\index##1{##1}%
584     \@nameauth@DoIndextrue%
585     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
586     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
587     \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
588     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
589     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
590     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
591     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\@nameauth@Debug}%

```

We interleave printing name patterns (`\ShowPattern`), printing full index entries as if they were page refs (`\ShowIdxPageref*`), and printing short index entries (`\ShowIdxPageref`). Since we are in a local scope we delete the tag and xref control sequences as needed. They will be restored when the scope ends. We do not care about xrefs because we just want to see what happens with the name. We can always go to the `idx` and `ind` files if needed.

```

592     \ifx\arga\@empty
593         \ifx\argc\@empty
594             \ifdefined\ShortIdxEntry
595                 \csundef{\csb!PRE}%
596                 \csundef{\csb!TAG}%
597                 \csundef{\csb!PN}%
598                 \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
599             \else
600                 \ifdefined\LongIdxEntry

```

```

601         \csundef{\csb!PN}%
602         \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
603     \else
604         \csb%
605     \fi
606 \fi
607 \else
608     \ifx\suffb\@empty
609         \ifdefined\ShortIdxEntry
610             \csundef{\csbc!PRE}%
611             \csundef{\csbc!TAG}%
612             \csundef{\csbc!PN}%
613             \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
614         \else
615             \ifdefined\LongIdxEntry
616                 \csundef{\csbc!PN}%
617                 \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
618             \else
619                 \csbc%
620             \fi
621         \fi
622     \else
623         \ifdefined\ShortIdxEntry
624             \csundef{\csb!PRE}%
625             \csundef{\csb!TAG}%
626             \csundef{\csb!PN}%
627             \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
628         \else
629             \ifdefined\LongIdxEntry
630                 \csundef{\csb!PN}%
631                 \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
632             \else
633                 \csb%
634             \fi
635         \fi
636     \fi
637 \fi
638 \else
639     \ifdefined\ShortIdxEntry
640         \csundef{\csab!PRE}%
641         \csundef{\csab!TAG}%
642         \csundef{\csab!PN}%
643         \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
644     \else
645         \ifdefined\LongIdxEntry
646             \csundef{\csab!PN}%
647             \IndexName[#1]{#2}[#3]%
648         \else
649             \csab%
650         \fi
651     \fi
652 \fi
653 \global\undef{\LongIdxEntry}%
654 \global\undef{\ShortIdxEntry}%
655 \egroup%
656 }

```

### 3.5 User Interface Macros: Prefix Macros

#### Syntactic Formatting — Capitalization

<code>\CapThis</code>	Tells the root capping macro to cap the first character of all name elements. 657 <code>\newcommand*\CapThis{\@nameauth@DoCapstrue}</code>
<code>\AccentCapThis</code>	Overrides the automatic test for active Unicode characters. This is a fall-back in case the automatic test for active Unicode characters fails. 658 <code>\newcommand*\AccentCapThis%</code> 659 <code>{\@nameauth@Accenttrue\@nameauth@DoCapstrue}</code>
<code>\CapName</code>	Capitalize entire required name. Overrides <code>\CapThis</code> for surnames. 660 <code>\newcommand*\CapName{\@nameauth@AllThistrue}</code>
<code>\AllCapsInactive</code>	Turn off global surname capitalization. 661 <code>\newcommand*\AllCapsInactive{\@nameauth@AllCapsfalse}</code>
<code>\AllCapsActive</code>	Turn on global surname capitalization. Activates <code>\CapName</code> for every name. 662 <code>\newcommand*\AllCapsActive{\@nameauth@AllCapstrue}</code>

#### Syntactic Formatting — Reversing

<code>\RevName</code>	Reverse name order. 663 <code>\newcommand*\RevName{\@nameauth@RevThistrue}</code>
<code>\ReverseInactive</code>	Turn off global name reversing. 664 <code>\newcommand*\ReverseInactive{\@nameauth@RevAllfalse}</code>
<code>\ReverseActive</code>	Turn on global name reversing. Activates <code>\RevName</code> for every name. 665 <code>\newcommand*\ReverseActive{\@nameauth@RevAlltrue}</code>
<code>\ForceFN</code>	Force the printing of an Eastern forename or ancient affix in the text, but only when using the “short name” macro <code>\FName</code> and the <code>\S{macro}</code> . 666 <code>\newcommand*\ForceFN{\@nameauth@EastFNtrue}</code>

#### Syntactic Formatting — Reversing with Commas

<code>\RevComma</code>	Last name, comma, first name. 667 <code>\newcommand*\RevComma%</code> 668 <code>{\@nameauth@RevThisCommatrue}</code>
<code>\ReverseCommaInactive</code>	Turn off global “last-name-comma-first.” 669 <code>\newcommand*\ReverseCommaInactive%</code> 670 <code>{\@nameauth@RevAllCommafalse}</code>
<code>\ReverseCommaActive</code>	Turn on global “last-name-comma-first.” Activates <code>\RevComma</code> for every name. 671 <code>\newcommand*\ReverseCommaActive%</code> 672 <code>{\@nameauth@RevAllCommatrue}</code>

#### Alternate Formatting

<code>\AltFormatActive</code>	Turn on alternate formatting, engage the formatting macros. 673 <code>\newcommand*\AltFormatActive{%</code> 674 <code>\global\@nameauth@AltFormattrue%</code> 675 <code>\global\@nameauth@DoAlttrue%</code> 676 <code>}</code>
-------------------------------	--

`\AltFormatActive*` Turn on alternate formatting, disengage the formatting macros.

```

677 \WithSuffix{\newcommand*}\AltFormatActive*{%
678   \global\@nameauth@AltFormattrue%
679   \global\@nameauth@DoAltfalse%
680 }

```

`\AltFormatInactive` Turn off alternate formatting altogether.

```

681 \newcommand*\AltFormatInactive{%
682   \global\@nameauth@AltFormatfalse%
683   \global\@nameauth@DoAltfalse%
684 }

```

`\AltOn` Locally turn on alternate formatting.

```

685 \newcommand*\AltOn{%
686   \if@nameauth@InHook
687     \if@nameauth@AltFormat\@nameauth@DoAlttrue\fi
688   \fi
689 }

```

`\AltOff` Locally turn off alternate formatting.

```

690 \newcommand*\AltOff{%
691   \if@nameauth@InHook
692     \if@nameauth@AltFormat\@nameauth@DoAltfalse\fi
693   \fi
694 }

```

`\AltCaps` Alternate discretionary capping macro triggered by `\CapThis`.

```

695 \newcommand*\AltCaps[1]{%
696   \if@nameauth@InHook
697     \if@nameauth@DoCaps\MakeUppercase{#1}\else#1\fi
698   \else#1%
699   \fi
700 }

```

`\textSC` Alternate formatting macro: small caps when active.

```

701 \newcommand*\textSC[1]{%
702   \if@nameauth@DoAlt\textsc{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

`\textUC` Alternate formatting macro: uppercase when active.

```

703 \newcommand*\textUC[1]{%
704   \if@nameauth@DoAlt\MakeUppercase{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

`\textIT` Alternate formatting macro: italic when active.

```

705 \newcommand*\textIT[1]{%
706   \if@nameauth@DoAlt\textit{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

`\textBF` Alternate formatting macro: boldface when active.

```

707 \newcommand*\textBF[1]{%
708   \if@nameauth@DoAlt\textbf{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

## Syntactic Formatting — Affixes

`\ShowComma` Put comma between name and suffix one time.

```

709 \newcommand*\ShowComma{\@nameauth@ShowCommatrue}

```

<code>\NoComma</code>	Remove comma between name and suffix one time (with <code>comma</code> option). 710 <code>\newcommand*\NoComma{\@nameauth@NoCommatrue}</code>
<code>\DropAffix</code>	Suppress the affix in a long Western name. 711 <code>\newcommand*\DropAffix{\@nameauth@ShortSNNtrue}</code>
<code>\KeepAffix</code>	Trigger a name-suffix pair to be separated by a non-breaking space. 712 <code>\newcommand*\KeepAffix{\@nameauth@NBSPtrue}</code>
<code>\KeepName</code>	Use non-breaking spaces between name syntactic forms. 713 <code>\newcommand*\KeepName{\@nameauth@NBSPtrue\@nameauth@NBSPXtrue}</code>

## Post-Processing — Main Versus Front Matter

<code>\NamesInactive</code>	Switch to the “non-formatted” species of names. 714 <code>\newcommand*\NamesInactive{\@nameauth@MainFormatfalse}</code>
<code>\NamesActive</code>	Switch to the “formatted” species of names. 715 <code>\newcommand*\NamesActive{\@nameauth@MainFormattrue}</code>

## Name Decisions — First / Subsequent Reference

<code>\ForgetThis</code>	Have the naming engine <code>\@nameauth@Name</code> call <code>\ForgetName</code> internally. 716 <code>\newcommand*\ForgetThis{\@nameauth@Forgettrue}</code>
<code>\SubvertThis</code>	Have the naming engine <code>\@nameauth@Name</code> call <code>\SubvertName</code> internally. 717 <code>\newcommand*\SubvertThis{\@nameauth@Subverttrue}</code>
<code>\ForceName</code>	Set <code>\@nameauth@FirstFormat</code> to be true even for subsequent name uses. Works for one name only. 718 <code>\newcommand*\ForceName{\@nameauth@FirstFormattrue}</code>

## Name Occurrence Tweaks

<code>\LocalNames</code>	<code>\LocalNames</code> sets <code>@nameauth@LocalNames</code> true so <code>\ForgetName</code> and <code>\SubvertName</code> do not affect both main and front matter naming systems. 719 <code>\newcommand*\LocalNames{global\@nameauth@LocalNamestrue}</code>
<code>\GlobalNames</code>	<code>\GlobalNames</code> sets <code>@nameauth@LocalNames</code> false. This restores the default behavior of <code>\ForgetName</code> and <code>\SubvertName</code> . 720 <code>\newcommand*\GlobalNames{global\@nameauth@LocalNamesfalse}</code>

## Index Operations

<code>\IndexInactive</code>	Turn off global indexing of names. 721 <code>\newcommand*\IndexInactive{\@nameauth@DoIndexfalse}</code>
<code>\SkipIndex</code>	Turn off the next instance of indexing in <code>\Name</code> , <code>\FName</code> , and starred forms. 722 <code>\newcommand*\SkipIndex{\@nameauth@SkipIndextrue}</code>
<code>\JustIndex</code>	Makes the next call to <code>\Name</code> , <code>\FName</code> , and starred forms act like <code>\IndexName</code> . Overrides <code>\SkipIndex</code> . 723 <code>\newcommand*\JustIndex{\@nameauth@JustIndextrue}</code>
<code>\IndexActive</code>	Turn on global indexing of names. 724 <code>\newcommand*\IndexActive{\@nameauth@DoIndextrue}</code>

`\IndexActual` Change the “actual” character from the default.

```
725 \newcommand*\IndexActual[1]
726   {\global\renewcommand*\@nameauth@Actual{#1}}
```

`\SeeAlso` Change the type of cross-reference from a *see* reference to a *see also* reference. Works once per xref, unless one uses `\Include*`, in which case, take care!

```
727 \newcommand*\SeeAlso{\@nameauth@SeeAlsottrue}
```

### 3.6 User Interface Macros: General

`\ShowPattern` This displays the pattern that the name arguments generate; maybe useful for debugging.

```
728 \newcommand*\ShowPattern{\@nameauth@Debug}
```

`\ShowIdxPageref` This displays the index entry that will be generated. This may be useful for debugging.

```
729 \newcommand*\ShowIdxPageref%
730   {\def\LongIdxEntry{}\ShowPattern}
```

`\ShowIdxPageref*` This displays an index entry with no tag. This may be useful for debugging.

```
731 \WithSuffix{\newcommand*\ShowIdxPageref*%
732   {\def\ShortIdxEntry{}\ShowPattern}}
```

`\NameParser` Generate a name form based on the current state of the `nameauth` macros in the locked path. Available for use only in the hook macros.

```
733 \newcommand*\NameParser
734 {%
735   \if@nameauth@InHook
736     \let\SNN\rootb%
737     \ifx\arga@empty
```

If the first optarg is empty, it is a non-Western name. The forename will be either the suffix or the final optarg.

```
738     \ifx\argc@empty
739       \let\FNN\suffb%
740     \else
741       \let\FNN\argc%
742     \fi
743     \ifx\suffb@empty
```

Mononym case

```
744     \ifx\FNN@empty
745       \SNN%
746     \else
```

Eastern or ancient name, using the older syntax, with name reversing and forcing

```
747     \if@nameauth@FullName%
748       \if@nameauth@RevThis
749         \FNN\Space\SNN%
750       \else
751         \SNN\Space\FNN%
752       \fi
753     \else
754       \if@nameauth@FirstName
755         \if@nameauth@EastFN
756           \FNN%
757         \else
758           \SNN%
759         \fi
```

```

760         \else
761         \SNN%
762     \fi
763 \fi
764 \fi
765 \else

```

Eastern or ancient name, using the new syntax, with name reversing and forcing

```

766     \if@nameauth@FullName
767     \if@nameauth@RevThis
768     \FNN\Space\SNN%
769     \else
770     \SNN\Space\FNN%
771     \fi
772 \else
773     \if@nameauth@FirstName
774     \if@nameauth@EastFN
775     \FNN%
776     \else
777     \SNN%
778     \fi
779     \else
780     \SNN%
781     \fi
782 \fi
783 \fi
784 \else

```

Western name with name reversing and suffixes

```

785     \ifx\argc\@empty
786     \let\FNN\arga%
787     \else
788     \let\FNN\argc%
789     \fi
790 \unless\ifx\suffb\@empty
791     \def\SNN{\rootb\Space\suffb}%
792     \if@nameauth@ShortSNN\let\SNN\rootb\fi%
793 \fi
794 \if@nameauth@FullName
795     \if@nameauth@RevThis
796     \SNN\SpaceX\FNN%
797     \else
798     \if@nameauth@RevThisComma
799     \SNN\RevSpace\FNN%
800     \else
801     \FNN\SpaceX\SNN%
802     \fi
803 \fi
804 \else
805     \if@nameauth@FirstName
806     \FNN%
807     \else
808     \let\SNN\rootb%
809     \SNN%
810     \fi
811 \fi
812 \fi

```

```

813 \fi
814 }

```

## Traditional Naming Interface

**\Name** **\Name** calls **\NameauthName**, the interface hook.

```
815 \newcommand\Name{\NameauthName}
```

**\Name\*** **\Name\*** sets up a long name reference and calls **\NameauthLName**, the interface hook.

```
816 \WithSuffix{\newcommand*}\Name*%
817 {\@nameauth@FullNametrue\NameauthLName}
```

**\FName** **\FName** sets up a short name reference and calls **\NameauthFName**, the interface hook.

```
818 \newcommand\FName{\@nameauth@FirstNametrue\NameauthFName}
```

**\FName\*** **\FName** and **\FName\*** are identical in function.

```
819 \WithSuffix{\newcommand*}\FName*%
820 {\@nameauth@FirstNametrue\NameauthFName}
```

## Index Operations

**\IndexProtect** We shut down all output from the naming and indexing macros to protect against problems in the index in case a macro in an index entry should expand into one of the naming macros.

```
821 \newcommand*\IndexProtect
822 {%
823 \@nameauth@DoIndexfalse%
824 \@nameauth@BigLocktrue%
825 }
```

**\IndexName** This creates an index entry with page references. It issues warnings if the **verbose** option is selected. It prints nothing. First we make copies of the arguments.

```
826 \newcommandx*\IndexName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
827 {%
828 \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
829 \protected@edef\rootb{\@nameauth@Root{#2}}%
830 \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
831 \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
832 \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
833 \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
834 \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
```

Test for malformed input.

```
835 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IndexName}%
```

We create the appropriate index entries, calling **\@nameauth@Index** to handle sorting and tagging. We do not create an index entry for a cross-reference (code **!PN** for pseudonym), used by **\IndexRef**, **\Excludename**, **\Includename**, **\AKA**, and **\PName**. If the first optarg is empty, it is a non-Western name.

```
836 \ifx\arga\@empty
837 \ifx\argc\@empty
838 \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
839 \if@nameauth@Verbose
840 \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
841 {macro \IndexName: XRef: #2 exists}%
842 \fi
843 \else
844 \ifx\suffb\@empty
```



mononym or Eastern / ancient name, new syntax

```

845      \@nameauth@Index{\csb}{\rootb}%
846      \else
847      \@nameauth@Index{\csb}{\rootb\space\suffb}%
848      \fi
849  \fi
850  \else
851  \ifx\suffb\@empty
852  \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
853  \if@nameauth@Verbose
854  \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
855  {macro \IndexName: XRef: #2 #3 exists}%
856  \fi
857  \else

```

Eastern or ancient name, older syntax

```

858      \@nameauth@Index{\csbc}{\rootb\space\argc}%
859      \fi
860  \else
861  \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
862  \if@nameauth@Verbose
863  \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
864  {macro \IndexName: XRef: #2 exists}%
865  \fi
866  \else

```

Eastern or ancient name, new syntax, alternate name ignored

```

867      \@nameauth@Index{\csb}{\rootb\space\suffb}%
868      \fi
869  \fi
870  \fi
871  \else
872  \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
873  \if@nameauth@Verbose
874  \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
875  {macro \IndexName: XRef: #1 #2 exists}%
876  \fi
877  \else

```

Western name, without and with affix

```

878      \ifx\suffb\@empty
879      \@nameauth@Index{\csab}%
880      {\rootb,\space\arga}%
881  \else
882      \@nameauth@Index{\csab}%
883      {\rootb,\space\arga,\space\suffb}%
884  \fi
885  \fi
886  \fi
887 }

```

`\IndexRef` This creates an index cross-reference that is not already a pseudonym. It prints nothing. First we make copies of the arguments to test them and make parsing decisions.

```

888 \newcommand*\IndexRef[4][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
889 {%
890   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
891   \protected@edef\rootb{\@nameauth@Root{#2}}%

```

```

892 \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
893 \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
894 \protected@edef\target{#4}%
895 \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
896 \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
897 \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
898 \let\ex\expandafter%

```

Test for malformed input.

```

899 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IndexRef}%
900 \@nameauth@Xreftrue%

```

We create either *see also* entries or *see* entries. The former are unrestricted. The latter are only created if they do not already exist as main entries.

```

901 \ifx\arga\@empty
902   \ifx\argc\@empty
903     \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
904       \if@nameauth@Verbose
905         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
906         {macro \IndexRef: XRef: #2 exists}%
907       \fi
908     \else
909       \ifx\suffb\@empty

```

mononym or Eastern / ancient name, new syntax

```

910         \if@nameauth@SeeAlso
911         \@nameauth@Index{\csb}{\rootb|seealso{\target}}%
912       \else
913         \@nameauth@Index{\csb}{\rootb|see{\target}}%
914       \fi
915     \else
916       \if@nameauth@SeeAlso
917         \@nameauth@Index{\csb}%
918         {\rootb\space\suffb|seealso{\target}}%
919       \else
920         \@nameauth@Index{\csb}%
921         {\rootb\space\suffb|see{\target}}%
922       \fi
923     \fi
924   \csgdef{\csb!PN}{}%
925 \fi
926 \else
927   \ifx\suffb\@empty
928     \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
929       \if@nameauth@Verbose
930         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
931         {macro \IndexRef: XRef: #2 #3 exists}%
932       \fi
933     \else

```

Eastern or ancient name, older syntax

```

934     \if@nameauth@SeeAlso
935     \@nameauth@Index{\csbc}%
936     {\rootb\space\argc|seealso{\target}}%
937   \else
938     \@nameauth@Index{\csbc}%
939     {\rootb\space\argc|see{\target}}%
940   \fi

```

```

941         \csgdef{\csbc!PN}{}%
942     \fi
943 \else
944     \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
945         \if@nameauth@Verbose
946             \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
947                 {macro \IndexRef: XRef: #2 exists}%
948         \fi
949     \else
Eastern or ancient name, new syntax, alternate name ignored
950         \if@nameauth@SeeAlso
951             \@nameauth@Index{\csb}%
952             {\rootb\space\suffb|seealso{\target}}%
953         \else
954             \@nameauth@Index{\csb}%
955             {\rootb\space\suffb|see{\target}}%
956         \fi
957         \csgdef{\csb!PN}{}%
958     \fi
959 \fi
960 \fi
961 \else
962     \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
963         \if@nameauth@Verbose
964             \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
965                 {macro \IndexRef: XRef: #1 #2 exists}%
966         \fi
967     \else
Western name, without and with affix
968         \ifx\suffb\@empty
969             \if@nameauth@SeeAlso
970                 \@nameauth@Index{\csab}%
971                 {\rootb,\space\arga|seealso{\target}}%
972             \else
973                 \@nameauth@Index{\csab}%
974                 {\rootb,\space\arga|see{\target}}%
975             \fi
976         \else
977             \if@nameauth@SeeAlso
978                 \@nameauth@Index{\csab}%
979                 {\rootb,\space\arga,\space\suffb|seealso{\target}}%
980             \else
981                 \@nameauth@Index{\csab}%
982                 {\rootb,\space\arga,\space\suffb|see{\target}}%
983             \fi
984         \fi
985         \csgdef{\csab!PN}{}%
986     \fi
987 \fi
988 \@nameauth@Xreffalse%
This may not be necessary, but we do it for consistency.
989 \if@nameauth@OldReset
990     \@nameauth@SeeAlsofalse%
991 \else
992     \global\@nameauth@SeeAlsofalse%

```

```

993 \fi
994 }

```

`\ExcludeName` This macro prevents a name from being indexed.

```

995 \newcommandx*\ExcludeName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
996 {%
997   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
998   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
999   \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1000   \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1001   \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1002   \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

Below we parse the name arguments and create a non-empty pseudonym macro.

```

1003   \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\ExcludeName}%
1004   \ifx\arga\@empty
1005     \ifx\argc\@empty
1006       \if@nameauth@Verbose
1007         \ifcsname\csb!MN\endcsname
1008           \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1009             {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #2 exists}%
1010         \fi
1011       \ifcsname\csb!NF\endcsname
1012         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1013           {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #2 exists}%
1014       \fi
1015     \fi
1016     \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1017       \if@nameauth@Verbose
1018         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1019           {macro \ExcludeName: Xref: #2 exists}%
1020       \fi
1021     \else
1022       \csgdef{\csb!PN}{!}%
1023     \fi
1024   \else
1025     \ifx\suffb\@empty
1026       \if@nameauth@Verbose
1027         \ifcsname\csbc!MN\endcsname
1028           \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1029             {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #2 #3 exists}%
1030         \fi
1031       \ifcsname\csbc!NF\endcsname
1032         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1033           {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #2 #3 exists}%
1034       \fi
1035     \fi
1036     \csgdef{\csbc!PN}{!}%
1037     \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
1038       \if@nameauth@Verbose
1039         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1040           {macro \ExcludeName: Xref: #2 #3 exists}%
1041       \fi
1042     \else
1043       \csgdef{\csbc!PN}{!}%
1044     \fi
1045   \else

```

```

1046     \if@nameauth@Verbose
1047     \ifcsname\csb!MN\endcsname
1048     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1049     {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #2 exists}%
1050     \fi
1051     \ifcsname\csb!NF\endcsname
1052     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1053     {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #2 exists}%
1054     \fi
1055     \fi
1056     \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1057     \if@nameauth@Verbose
1058     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1059     {macro \ExcludeName: Xref: #2 exists}%
1060     \fi
1061     \else
1062     \csgdef{\csb!PN}{!}%
1063     \fi
1064     \fi
1065     \fi
1066   \else
1067     \if@nameauth@Verbose
1068     \ifcsname\csab!MN\endcsname
1069     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1070     {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #1 #2 exists}%
1071     \fi
1072     \ifcsname\csab!NF\endcsname
1073     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1074     {macro \ExcludeName: Reference: #1 #2 exists}%
1075     \fi
1076     \fi
1077     \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
1078     \if@nameauth@Verbose
1079     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1080     {macro \ExcludeName: Xref: #1 #2 exists}%
1081     \fi
1082     \else
1083     \csgdef{\csab!PN}{!}%
1084     \fi
1085     \fi
1086 }

```

**\IncludeName** This macro allows a name to be indexed if it is not a cross-reference.

```

1087 \newcommandx*\IncludeName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1088 {%
1089   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1090   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1091   \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1092   \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1093   \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1094   \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

Below we parse the name arguments and undefine only an “excluded” name.

```

1095   \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IncludeName}%
1096   \ifx\arga\@empty
1097     \ifx\argc\@empty
1098       \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname

```

```

1099     \edef\testex{\csname\csb!PN\endcsname}%
1100     \unless\ifx\testex\@empty\global\csundef{\csb!PN}%
1101     \else
1102         \if@nameauth@Verbose
1103             \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1104             {macro \IncludeName: Xref: #2 exists}%
1105         \fi
1106     \fi
1107 \fi
1108 \else
1109     \ifx\suffb\@empty
1110         \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
1111             \edef\testex{\csname\csbc!PN\endcsname}%
1112             \unless\ifx\testex\@empty\global\csundef{\csbc!PN}%
1113         \else
1114             \if@nameauth@Verbose
1115                 \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1116                 {macro \IncludeName: Xref: #2 #3 exists}%
1117             \fi
1118         \fi
1119     \fi
1120 \else
1121     \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1122         \edef\testex{\csname\csb!PN\endcsname}%
1123         \unless\ifx\testex\@empty\global\csundef{\csb!PN}%
1124     \else
1125         \if@nameauth@Verbose
1126             \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1127             {macro \IncludeName: Xref: #2 exists}%
1128         \fi
1129     \fi
1130 \fi
1131 \fi
1132 \fi
1133 \else
1134     \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
1135         \edef\testex{\csname\csab!PN\endcsname}%
1136         \unless\ifx\testex\@empty\global\csundef{\csab!PN}%
1137     \else
1138         \if@nameauth@Verbose
1139             \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1140             {macro \IncludeName: Xref: #1 #2 exists}%
1141         \fi
1142     \fi
1143 \fi
1144 \fi
1145 }

```

**\IncludeName\*** This macro allows any name to be indexed, undefining cross-references.

```

1146 \WithSuffix{\newcommandx*}\IncludeName*[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1147 {%
1148     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1149     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1150     \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1151     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1152     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%

```

```
1153 \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
```

Below we parse the name arguments and undefine an xref control sequence.

```
1154 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IncludeName*}%
1155 \ifx\arga\@empty
1156   \ifx\argc\@empty
1157     \global\csundef{\csb!PN}%
1158   \else
1159     \ifx\suffb\@empty
1160       \global\csundef{\csbc!PN}%
1161     \else
1162       \global\csundef{\csb!PN}%
1163     \fi
1164   \fi
1165 \else
1166   \global\csundef{\csab!PN}%
1167 \fi
1168 }
```

**\PretagName** This creates an index entry tag that is applied before a name.

```
1169 \newcommandx*\PretagName[4][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1170 {%
1171   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1172   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1173   \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1174   \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1175   \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1176   \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
```

We parse the arguments, defining the sort tag control sequences used by `\@nameauth@Index`.

```
1177 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\PretagName}%
1178 \ifx\arga\@empty
1179   \ifx\argc\@empty
1180     \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1181       \if@nameauth@Verbose
1182         \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1183         {macro \PretagName: tagging xref: #2}%
1184       \fi
1185     \fi
1186     \if@nameauth@Pretag\csgdef{\csb!PRE}{#4\@nameauth@Actual}\fi
1187   \else
1188     \ifx\suffb\@empty
1189       \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
1190         \if@nameauth@Verbose
1191           \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1192           {macro \PretagName: tagging xref: #2 #3}%
1193         \fi
1194       \fi
1195       \if@nameauth@Pretag\csgdef{\csbc!PRE}{#4\@nameauth@Actual}\fi
1196     \else
1197       \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1198         \if@nameauth@Verbose
1199           \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1200           {macro \PretagName: tagging xref: #2}%
1201         \fi
1202       \fi
```

```

1203         \if@nameauth@Pretag\csgdef{\csb!PRE}{#4\@nameauth@Actual}\fi
1204     \fi
1205 \fi
1206 \else
1207     \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
1208         \if@nameauth@Verbose
1209             \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1210             {macro \PretagName: tagging xref: #1 #2}%
1211         \fi
1212     \fi
1213     \if@nameauth@Pretag\csgdef{\csab!PRE}{#4\@nameauth@Actual}\fi
1214 \fi
1215 }

```

**\TagName** This creates an index entry tag for a name that is not used as a cross-reference.

```

1216 \newcommandx*\TagName[4][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1217 {%
1218     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1219     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1220     \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1221     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1222     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1223     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

We parse the arguments, defining the macros used by \@nameauth@Index.

```

1224     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\TagName}%
1225     \ifx\arga\@empty
1226         \ifx\argc\@empty
1227             \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1228                 \if@nameauth@Verbose
1229                     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1230                     {macro \TagName: not tagging xref: #2}%
1231             \fi
1232         \else
1233             \csgdef{\csb!TAG}{#4}%
1234         \fi
1235     \else
1236         \ifx\suffb\@empty
1237             \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
1238                 \if@nameauth@Verbose
1239                     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1240                     {macro \TagName: not tagging xref: #2 #3}%
1241             \fi
1242         \else
1243             \csgdef{\csbc!TAG}{#4}%
1244         \fi
1245     \else
1246         \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1247             \if@nameauth@Verbose
1248                 \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1249                 {macro \TagName: not tagging xref: #2}%
1250             \fi
1251         \else
1252             \csgdef{\csb!TAG}{#4}%
1253         \fi
1254     \fi
1255 \fi

```



```

1256 \else
1257   \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
1258     \if@nameauth@Verbose
1259       \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1260       {macro \TagName: not tagging xref: #1 #2}%
1261     \fi
1262   \else
1263     \csgdef{\csab!TAG}{#4}%
1264   \fi
1265 \fi
1266 }

```

**\UntagName** This deletes an index tag.

```

1267 \newcommandx*\UntagName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1268 {%
1269   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1270   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1271   \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1272   \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1273   \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1274   \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

We parse the arguments, undefining the index tag macros.

```

1275   \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\UntagName}%
1276   \ifx\arga\@empty
1277     \ifx\argc\@empty
1278       \global\csundef{\csb!TAG}%
1279     \else
1280       \ifx\suffb\@empty
1281         \global\csundef{\csbc!TAG}%
1282       \else
1283         \global\csundef{\csb!TAG}%
1284       \fi
1285     \fi
1286   \else
1287     \global\csundef{\csab!TAG}%
1288   \fi
1289 }

```

## Name Info Data Set: “Text Tags”

**\NameAddInfo** This creates a macro that expands to information associated with a given name, similar to an index tag, but usable in the body text.

```

1290 \newcommandx\NameAddInfo[4][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1291 {%
1292   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1293   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1294   \protected@edef\Suff{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1295   \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1296   \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1297   \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

We parse the arguments, defining the text tag control sequences.

```

1298   \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\NameAddInfo}%
1299   \ifx\arga\@empty
1300     \ifx\argc\@empty
1301       \csgdef{\csb!DB}{#4}%

```

```

1302     \else
1303         \ifx\Suff\@empty
1304             \csgdef{\csbc!DB}{#4}%
1305         \else
1306             \csgdef{\csb!DB}{#4}%
1307         \fi
1308     \fi
1309 \else
1310     \csgdef{\csab!DB}{#4}%
1311 \fi
1312 }

```

**\NameQueryInfo** This prints the information created by **\NameAddInfo** if it exists.

```

1313 \newcommand*\NameQueryInfo[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1314 {%
1315     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1316     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1317     \protected@edef\Suff{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1318     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1319     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1320     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
1321     \unless\if@nameauth@BigLock

```

We parse the arguments, invoking the tag macros to expand to their contents.

```

1322     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\NameQueryInfo}%
1323     \ifx\arga\@empty
1324         \ifx\argc\@empty
1325             \ifcsname\csb!DB\endcsname\csname\csb!DB\endcsname\fi
1326         \else
1327             \ifx\Suff\@empty
1328                 \ifcsname\csbc!DB\endcsname\csname\csbc!DB\endcsname\fi
1329             \else
1330                 \ifcsname\csb!DB\endcsname\csname\csb!DB\endcsname\fi
1331             \fi
1332         \fi
1333     \else
1334         \ifcsname\csab!DB\endcsname\csname\csab!DB\endcsname\fi
1335     \fi
1336 \fi
1337 }

```

**\NameClearInfo** This deletes a text tag. It has the same structure as **\UntagName**.

```

1338 \newcommand*\NameClearInfo[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1339 {%
1340     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1341     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1342     \protected@edef\Suff{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1343     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1344     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1345     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

We parse the arguments, undefining the text tag control sequences.

```

1346     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\NameClearInfo}%
1347     \ifx\arga\@empty
1348         \ifx\argc\@empty
1349             \global\csundef{\csb!DB}%
1350         \else

```

```

1351     \ifx\Suff\@empty
1352     \global\csundef{\csbc!DB}%
1353     \else
1354     \global\csundef{\csb!DB}%
1355     \fi
1356 \fi
1357 \else
1358     \global\csundef{\csab!DB}%
1359 \fi
1360 }

```

## Name Decisions

**\IfMainName** This macro expands one path if a main matter name exists, or else the other.

```

1361 \newcommandx\IfMainName[5][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1362 {%
1363     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1364     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1365     \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1366     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1367     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1368     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

Below we parse the name arguments and choose the path.

```

1369     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IfMainName}%
1370     \ifx\arga\@empty
1371     \ifx\argc\@empty
1372     \ifcsname\csb!MN\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1373     \else
1374     \ifx\suffb\@empty
1375     \ifcsname\csbc!MN\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1376     \else
1377     \ifcsname\csb!MN\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1378     \fi
1379     \fi
1380 \else
1381     \ifcsname\csab!MN\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1382 \fi
1383 }

```

**\IfFrontName** This macro expands one path if a front matter name exists, or else the other.

```

1384 \newcommandx\IfFrontName[5][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1385 {%
1386     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1387     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1388     \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1389     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1390     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1391     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

Below we parse the name arguments and choose the path.

```

1392     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IfFrontName}%
1393     \ifx\arga\@empty
1394     \ifx\argc\@empty
1395     \ifcsname\csb!NF\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1396     \else
1397     \ifx\suffb\@empty

```

```

1398         \ifcsname\csbc!NF\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1399     \else
1400         \ifcsname\csb!NF\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1401     \fi
1402 \fi
1403 \else
1404     \ifcsname\csab!NF\endcsname{#4}\else{#5}\fi
1405 \fi
1406 }

```

**\IfAKA** This macro expands one path if a cross-reference exists, another if it does not exist, and a third if it is excluded.

```

1407 \newcommandx\IfAKA[6][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1408 {%
1409     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1410     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1411     \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1412     \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1413     \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1414     \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

For each class of name we test first if a cross-reference exists, then if it is excluded.

```

1415     \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\IfAKA}%
1416     \ifx\arga\@empty
1417         \ifx\argc\@empty
1418             \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1419                 \edef\testex{\csname\csb!PN\endcsname}%
1420                 \ifx\testex\@empty{#4}\else{#6}\fi
1421             \else{#5}\fi
1422         \else
1423             \ifx\suffb\@empty
1424                 \ifcsname\csbc!PN\endcsname
1425                     \edef\testex{\csname\csbc!PN\endcsname}%
1426                     \ifx\testex\@empty{#4}\else{#6}\fi
1427                 \else{#5}\fi
1428             \else
1429                 \ifcsname\csb!PN\endcsname
1430                     \edef\testex{\csname\csb!PN\endcsname}%
1431                     \ifx\testex\@empty{#4}\else{#6}\fi
1432                 \else{#5}\fi
1433             \fi
1434         \fi
1435     \else
1436         \ifcsname\csab!PN\endcsname
1437             \edef\testex{\csname\csab!PN\endcsname}%
1438             \ifx\testex\@empty{#4}\else{#6}\fi
1439         \else{#5}\fi
1440     \fi
1441 }

```

## Changing Name Decisions

**\ForgetName** This undefines a control sequence to force a “first use.”

```

1442 \newcommandx*\ForgetName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1443 {%
1444     \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1445     \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%

```

```

1446 \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1447 \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1448 \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1449 \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%
1450 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{macro \string\ForgetName}%

```

Now we parse the arguments, undefining the control sequences either by current name type (via `@nameauth@MainFormat`) or completely (toggled by `@nameauth@LocalNames`).

```

1451 \ifx\arga\@empty
1452 \ifx\argc\@empty
1453 \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1454 \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1455 \global\csundef{\csb!MN}%
1456 \else
1457 \global\csundef{\csb!NF}%
1458 \fi
1459 \else
1460 \global\csundef{\csb!MN}%
1461 \global\csundef{\csb!NF}%
1462 \fi
1463 \else
1464 \ifx\suffb\@empty
1465 \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1466 \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1467 \global\csundef{\csbc!MN}%
1468 \else
1469 \global\csundef{\csbc!NF}%
1470 \fi
1471 \else
1472 \global\csundef{\csbc!MN}%
1473 \global\csundef{\csbc!NF}%
1474 \fi
1475 \else
1476 \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1477 \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1478 \global\csundef{\csb!MN}%
1479 \else
1480 \global\csundef{\csb!NF}%
1481 \fi
1482 \else
1483 \global\csundef{\csb!MN}%
1484 \global\csundef{\csb!NF}%
1485 \fi
1486 \fi
1487 \fi
1488 \else
1489 \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1490 \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1491 \global\csundef{\csab!MN}%
1492 \else
1493 \global\csundef{\csab!NF}%
1494 \fi
1495 \else
1496 \global\csundef{\csab!MN}%
1497 \global\csundef{\csab!NF}%
1498 \fi

```

```

1499 \fi
1500 }

```

**\SubvertName** This defines a control sequence to force a “subsequent use.”

```

1501 \newcommandx*\SubvertName[3][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty]
1502 {%
1503   \protected@edef\arga{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1504   \protected@edef\argc{\trim@spaces{#3}}%
1505   \protected@edef\suffb{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1506   \def\csb{\@nameauth@Clean{#2}}%
1507   \def\csbc{\@nameauth@Clean{#2,#3}}%
1508   \def\csab{\@nameauth@Clean{#1!#2}}%

```

We make copies of the arguments to test them.

```

1509   \@nameauth@Error{#2}{\macro \string\SubvertName}%

```

Now we parse the arguments, defining the control sequences either locally by section type or globally. `@nameauth@LocalNames` toggles the local or global behavior, while we select the type of name with `@nameauth@MainFormat`.

```

1510   \ifx\arga\@empty
1511     \ifx\argc\@empty
1512       \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1513         \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1514           \csgdef{\csb!MN}{}%
1515         \else
1516           \csgdef{\csb!NF}{}%
1517         \fi
1518       \else
1519         \csgdef{\csb!MN}{}%
1520         \csgdef{\csb!NF}{}%
1521       \fi
1522     \else
1523       \ifx\suffb\@empty
1524         \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1525           \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1526             \csgdef{\csbc!MN}{}%
1527           \else
1528             \csgdef{\csbc!NF}{}%
1529           \fi
1530         \else
1531           \csgdef{\csbc!MN}{}%
1532           \csgdef{\csbc!NF}{}%
1533         \fi
1534       \else
1535         \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1536           \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1537             \csgdef{\csb!MN}{}%
1538           \else
1539             \csgdef{\csb!NF}{}%
1540           \fi
1541         \else
1542           \csgdef{\csb!MN}{}%
1543           \csgdef{\csb!NF}{}%
1544         \fi
1545       \fi
1546     \fi
1547   \else

```

```

1548 \if@nameauth@LocalNames
1549 \if@nameauth@MainFormat
1550 \csgdef{\csab!MN}{}%
1551 \else
1552 \csgdef{\csab!NF}{}%
1553 \fi
1554 \else
1555 \csgdef{\csab!MN}{}%
1556 \csgdef{\csab!NF}{}%
1557 \fi
1558 \fi
1559 }

```

## Alternate Names

`\AKA` `\AKA` prints an alternate name and creates index cross-references. It prevents multiple generation of cross-references and suppresses double periods.

```

1560 \newcommandx*\AKA[5][1=\@empty, 3=\@empty, 5=\@empty]
1561 {%

```

Prevent entering `\AKA` via itself or `\@nameauth@Name`. Prevent the index-only flag. Tell the formatting system that `\AKA` is running.

```

1562 \if@nameauth@BigLock\@nameauth@Locktrue\fi
1563 \unless\if@nameauth@Lock
1564 \@nameauth@Locktrue%
1565 \@nameauth@InAKAtrue%
1566 \if@nameauth@OldReset
1567 \@nameauth@JustIndexfalse%
1568 \else
1569 \global\@nameauth@JustIndexfalse%
1570 \fi

```

Test for malformed input.

```

1571 \@nameauth@Error{#2}{\macro \string\AKA}%
1572 \@nameauth@Error{#4}{\macro \string\AKA}%

```

Names occur in horizontal mode; we ensure that. Next we make copies of the target name arguments and we parse and print the cross-reference name.

```

1573 \leavevmode\hbox{}%
1574 \protected@edef\argi{\trim@spaces{#1}}%
1575 \protected@edef\rooti{\@nameauth@Root{#2}}%
1576 \protected@edef\suffi{\@nameauth@Suffix{#2}}%
1577 \@nameauth@Parse[#3]{#4}[#5]{!PN}%

```

Create an index cross-reference based on the arguments.

```

1578 \unless\if@nameauth@SkipIndex
1579 \ifx\argi\@empty
1580 \ifx\suffi\@empty
1581 \IndexRef[#3]{#4}[#5]{\rooti}%
1582 \else
1583 \IndexRef[#3]{#4}[#5]{\rooti\space\suffi}%
1584 \fi
1585 \else
1586 \ifx\suffi\@empty
1587 \IndexRef[#3]{#4}[#5]{\rooti,\space\argi}%
1588 \else
1589 \IndexRef[#3]{#4}[#5]{\rooti,\space\argi,\space\suffi}%
1590 \fi

```

```

1591     \fi
1592     \fi
Reset all the “per name” Boolean values. The default is global.
1593     \if@nameauth@OldReset
1594         \@nameauth@SkipIndexfalse%
1595         \@nameauth@AltAKAfalse%
1596         \@nameauth@NBSPfalse%
1597         \@nameauth@NBSPXfalse%
1598         \@nameauth@DoCapsfalse%
1599         \@nameauth@Accentfalse%
1600         \@nameauth@AllThisfalse%
1601         \@nameauth@ShowCommafalse%
1602         \@nameauth@NoCommafalse%
1603         \@nameauth@RevThisfalse%
1604         \@nameauth@RevThisCommafalse%
1605         \@nameauth@ShortSNNfalse%
1606         \@nameauth@EastFNfalse%
1607     \else
1608         \global\@nameauth@SkipIndexfalse%
1609         \global\@nameauth@AltAKAfalse%
1610         \global\@nameauth@NBSPfalse%
1611         \global\@nameauth@NBSPXfalse%
1612         \global\@nameauth@DoCapsfalse%
1613         \global\@nameauth@Accentfalse%
1614         \global\@nameauth@AllThisfalse%
1615         \global\@nameauth@ShowCommafalse%
1616         \global\@nameauth@NoCommafalse%
1617         \global\@nameauth@RevThisfalse%
1618         \global\@nameauth@RevThisCommafalse%
1619         \global\@nameauth@ShortSNNfalse%
1620         \global\@nameauth@EastFNfalse%
1621     \fi
1622     \@nameauth@Lockfalse%
1623     \@nameauth@InAKAfalse%
Close the “locked” branch.
1624     \fi
Call the full stop detection.
1625     \if@nameauth@Punct\expandafter\@nameauth@CheckDot\fi
1626 }

```

**\AKA\*** This starred form sets a Boolean to print only the alternate name argument, if that exists, and calls **\AKA**.

```
1627 \WithSuffix{\newcommand*}\AKA*{\@nameauth@AltAKAtrue\AKA}
```

**\PName** **\PName** is a convenience macro that calls **\NameauthName**, then **\AKA**. It prevents the index-only feature from triggering.

```

1628 \newcommandx*\PName[5][1=\@empty,3=\@empty,5=\@empty]
1629 {%
1630     \@nameauth@JustIndexfalse%
1631     \if@nameauth@SkipIndex
1632         \NameauthName[#1]{#2}\space(\SkipIndex\AKA[#1]{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5})%
1633     \else
1634         \NameauthName[#1]{#2}\space(\AKA[#1]{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5})%
1635     \fi
1636 }

```



`\PName*` This sets up a long name reference and calls `\PName`.  
1637 `\WithSuffix{\newcommand*}\PName*{\@nameauth@FullNametrue\PName}`

## Simplified Interface

`nameauth` The `nameauth` environment creates macro shorthands. First we define a control sequence `\<` that takes four parameters, delimited by three ampersands and `>`.

```
1638 \newenvironment{nameauth}{%
1639   \begingroup%
1640   \let\ex\expandafter%
1641   \csdef{<###1&##2&##3&##4>{%
1642     \protected@edef\@arga{\trim@spaces{##1}}%
1643     \protected@edef\@testb{\trim@spaces{##2}}%
1644     \protected@edef\@testd{\trim@spaces{##4}}%
1645     \@nameauth@etoksb\expandafter{##2}%
1646     \@nameauth@etoksc\expandafter{##3}%
1647     \@nameauth@etoksd\expandafter{##4}%
```

The first argument must have some text to create a set of control sequences with it. The third argument is the required name argument. Redefining a shorthand creates a warning.

```
1648   \ifx\@arga\empty
1649     \PackageError{nameauth}%
1650     {environment nameauth: Control sequence missing}%
1651   \fi
1652   \@nameauth@Error{##3}{environment nameauth}%
1653   \ifcsname\@arga\endcsname
1654     \PackageWarning{nameauth}%
1655     {environment nameauth: Shorthand macro already exists}%
1656   \fi
```

Set up shorthands according to name form. We have to use `\expandafter`, not the  $\epsilon$ -TeX way, due to `\protected@edef` in the naming macros.

We begin with mononyms and non-Western names that use the new syntax. We use one `\expandafter` per token because we only have one argument to expand first.

```
1657   \ifx\@testd\empty
1658     \ifx\@testb\empty
1659       \ex\csgdef\ex{\ex\@arga\ex}%
1660       \ex{\ex\NameauthName\ex{\the\@nameauth@etoksc}}%
1661       \ex\csgdef\ex{\ex L\ex\@arga\ex}%
1662       \ex{\ex\@nameauth@FullNametrue%
1663         \ex\NameauthLName\ex{\the\@nameauth@etoksc}}%
1664       \ex\csgdef\ex{\ex S\ex\@arga\ex}%
1665       \ex{\ex\@nameauth@FirstNametrue%
1666         \ex\NameauthFName\ex{\the\@nameauth@etoksc}}%
1667     \else
```

Next we have Western names with no alternate names. Here we have two arguments to expand in reverse order, so we need three, then one uses of `\expandafter` per token.

```
1668       \ex\ex\ex\csgdef\ex\ex\ex{\ex\ex\ex\@arga\ex\ex\ex}%
1669       \ex\ex\ex{\ex\ex\ex\NameauthName%
1670         \ex\ex\ex[\ex\the\ex\@nameauth@etoksb\ex]%
1671         \ex{\the\@nameauth@etoksc}}%
1672       \ex\ex\ex\csgdef\ex\ex\ex{\ex\ex\ex L\ex\ex\ex\@arga%
1673         \ex\ex\ex}\ex\ex\ex{\ex\ex\ex\@nameauth@FullNametrue%
1674         \ex\ex\ex\NameauthLName%
1675         \ex\ex\ex[\ex\the\ex\@nameauth@etoksb\ex]%
1676         \ex{\the\@nameauth@etoksc}}%
1677       \ex\ex\ex\csgdef\ex\ex\ex{\ex\ex\ex S\ex\ex\ex\@arga%
```



## 4 Change History

0.7	General: Initial release . . . . .	1	2.0	\@nameauth@@Root: Trim spaces . . . . .	78
0.75	\ForgetName: Current args . . . . .	108		\@nameauth@Actual: Added . . . . .	89
	\IndexName: Current args . . . . .	96		\@nameauth@Index: New tagging . . . . .	88
0.85	\@nameauth@Name: Hide commas . . . . .	81		\@nameauth@Name: Trim spaces; fix tags . . . . .	81
	\AKA: Hide commas . . . . .	111		\AKA: Trim spaces; fix tagging . . . . .	111
	\IndexName: Hide commas . . . . .	96		\IndexActual: Added . . . . .	94
0.9	\@nameauth@@Suffix: Added . . . . .	78		\IndexName: Fix spaces, tagging . . . . .	96
	\@nameauth@Suffix: Added . . . . .	78		\PretagName: Added . . . . .	103
	\AKA*: Added . . . . .	112		\TagName: Redesign tagging . . . . .	104
	\FName: Added . . . . .	96		\UntagName: Redesign tagging . . . . .	105
	\SubvertName: Added . . . . .	110		General: Use dtxgen; prevent bad args . . . . .	1
0.94	\@nameauth@Index: Added . . . . .	88		nameauth: Better arg handling . . . . .	113
	\CapThis: Added . . . . .	91	2.1	\@nameauth@Name: Fix Unicode . . . . .	81
	\ExcludeName: Added . . . . .	100		\AKA: Fix Unicode . . . . .	111
	\IndexActive: Added . . . . .	93		\AccentCapThis: Added . . . . .	91
	\IndexInactive: Added . . . . .	93	2.11	nameauth: Bugfix . . . . .	113
1.0	General: Works with microtype, memoir . . . . .	1	2.2	\NameauthFName: Added . . . . .	76
1.2	\TagName: Added . . . . .	104		\NameauthName: Added . . . . .	76
	\UntagName: Added . . . . .	105	2.3	\@nameauth@Name: Internal . . . . .	81
1.26	\AKA: Fix affixes . . . . .	111		\AKA: Fix starred mode . . . . .	111
	\IndexName: Fix affixes . . . . .	96		\ExcludeName: New xref test . . . . .	100
1.4	\ShowComma: Added . . . . .	92		\FName: Interface macro . . . . .	96
1.5	\@nameauth@@Suffix: Trim spaces . . . . .	78		\FName*: Interface macro . . . . .	96
	\@nameauth@Name: Reversing/caps . . . . .	81		\ForgetName: Global or local . . . . .	108
	\AKA: Reversing, caps . . . . .	111		\GlobalNames: Added . . . . .	93
	\AllCapsActive: Added . . . . .	91		\IfAKA: Added . . . . .	108
	\AllCapsInactive: Added . . . . .	91		\IfFrontName: Added . . . . .	107
	\CapName: Added . . . . .	91		\IfMainName: Added . . . . .	107
	\RevComma: Added . . . . .	91		\LocalNames: Added . . . . .	93
	\RevName: Added . . . . .	91		\Name: Interface macro . . . . .	96
	\ReverseActive: Added . . . . .	91		\Name*: Interface macro . . . . .	96
	\ReverseCommaActive: Added . . . . .	91		\NameauthLName: Added . . . . .	76
	\ReverseCommaInactive: Added . . . . .	91		\PName: Work with hooks . . . . .	112
	\ReverseInactive: Added . . . . .	91		\SubvertName: Global or local . . . . .	110
1.6	nameauth: Environment added . . . . .	113	2.4	\@nameauth@Hook: Current form . . . . .	87
1.9	\ForgetName: Global undef . . . . .	108		\@nameauth@Name: Set token regs . . . . .	81
	\KeepAffix: Added . . . . .	93		\FrontNameHook: Added . . . . .	76
	\TagName: Fix cs collisions . . . . .	104		\GlobalNames: Ensure global . . . . .	93
	\UntagName: Global undef, no cs collisions . . . . .	105		\IfAKA: Test for excluded . . . . .	108
	nameauth: Bugfix . . . . .	113		\LocalNames: Ensure global . . . . .	93
				\MainNameHook: Added . . . . .	76
				\NameAddInfo: Added . . . . .	105
				\NameClearInfo: Added . . . . .	106
				\NameQueryInfo: Added . . . . .	106
			2.41	\@nameauth@Name: Fix token regs . . . . .	81
				\AKA: Fix token regs . . . . .	111

nameauth: No local \newtoks	113	\AltOff: Added	92
2.5		\AltOn: Added	92
\@nameauth@Hook: Improve hooks	87	\ForceName: Added	93
\@nameauth@Name: Fix old syntax	81	\ForgetThis: Added	93
\FrontNamesFormat: Added	76	\IncludeName*: Fixed	102
General: No default format	1	\IndexName: Better tests	96
2.6		\IndexRef: Better tests	97
\@nameauth@Name: Better indexing	81	\JustIndex: Added	93
\AKA: Fix index commas	111	\KeepName: Added	93
\IndexName: Fix commas	96	\NameParser: Fix old syntax; add NBSP	94
\NoComma: Added	93	\NameQueryInfo: Short macro	106
3.0		\PName: Can skip index	112
\@nameauth@@Root: Redesigned	78	\SkipIndex: Added	93
\@nameauth@@Suffix: New test	78	\SubvertName: Fix old syntax	110
\@nameauth@@TrimTag: Added	78	\SubvertThis: Added	93
\@nameauth@Error: Added	80	\textBF: Added	92
\@nameauth@Hook: Fix punct. detection	87	\textIT: Added	92
\@nameauth@Name: Redesigned	81	\textSC: Added	92
\@nameauth@NonWest: Added	85	\textUC: Added	92
\@nameauth@Parse: Added	82	3.2	
\@nameauth@TrimTag: Added	78	\@nameauth@@GetSuff: Added	78
\@nameauth@UTFtest: Added	79	\@nameauth@@Root: Renamed	78
\@nameauth@West: Added	86	\@nameauth@@Suffix: Renamed	78
\AKA: Redesigned	111	\@nameauth@C@p: Renamed, use	
\DropAffix: Added	93	\MakeUppercase	79
\ExcludeName: Redesigned	100	\@nameauth@C@pUTF: Use \MakeUppercase	80
\ForceFN: Added	91	\@nameauth@Cap: Non-UTF	79
\IfAKA: Redesigned	108	\@nameauth@CapUTF: Added	79
\IncludeName: Added	101	\@nameauth@GetSuff: Added	78
\IncludeName*: Added	102	\@nameauth@Parse: Fix alt. format, affixes,	
\IndexName: Redesigned	96	use \MakeUppercase	82
\IndexRef: Added	97	\@nameauth@TestToks: Added	78
\NameParser: Added	94	\@nameauth@TrimTag: Renamed	78
\SeeAlso: Added	94	\@nameauth@UTFtest: Non-suffix only	79
3.01		\@nameauth@UTFtestS: Added	79
\@nameauth@Error: Fixed	80	\AltCaps: Use \MakeUppercase	92
3.02		\NameParser: Fix alt. format, affixes	94
\@nameauth@NonWest: Restrict \ForceFN	85	\textUC: Use \MakeUppercase	92
3.03		3.3	
\NameParser: First name only for short		\@nameauth@Debug: added	89
forms	94	\@nameauth@Index: Tags support hyperref	88
3.1		\@nameauth@Name: global flag reset	81
\@nameauth@C@p: Added	79	\@nameauth@NonWest: global flag reset	85
\@nameauth@C@pUTF: Added	80	\@nameauth@West: global flag reset	86
\@nameauth@Cap: Redesigned	79	\AKA: global flag reset	111
\@nameauth@Name: New workflow	81	\ExcludeName: More accurate warnings	100
\@nameauth@Parse: New workflow, caps	82	\IncludeName: Added warnings	101
\@nameauth@UTFtest: Override bypasses		\IndexProtect: added	96
test	79	\IndexRef: global flag reset	97
\AKA: Can skip index	111	\NameQueryInfo: lock added	106
\AltCaps: Added	92	\ShowIdxPageref: added	94
\AltFormatActive: Added	91	\ShowIdxPageref*: added	94
\AltFormatActive*: Added	92	\ShowPattern: added	94
\AltFormatInactive: Added	92	General: Update manual	1

## 5 Index

Numbers written in *italic* refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in roman refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols		
\@nameauth@@GetSuff . . .	<u>104</u>	Anthony, Susan B. . . . . 50
\@nameauth@@Root . . . . .	<u>97</u>	Arai Akino . . . . . 27
\@nameauth@@Suffix . . . . .	<u>101</u>	Aristotle . . . . . 7, 9, 12, 67
\@nameauth@@TrimTag . . . . .	<u>99</u>	Arouet, François-Marie . . . . .
\@nameauth@Actual . . . . .	<u>579</u>	. . . . . <i>see</i> Voltaire
\@nameauth@C@p . . . . .	<u>151</u>	Atatürk . . . <i>see</i> Kemal, Mustafa
\@nameauth@C@pUTF . . . . .	<u>154</u>	Attila the Hun . . . . . 9, 41
\@nameauth@Cap . . . . .	<u>150</u>	
\@nameauth@CapUTF . . . . .	<u>153</u>	<b>B</b>
\@nameauth@CheckDot . . . . .	<u>168</u>	<b>Babbage</b> , Charles . . . . . 36
\@nameauth@Clean . . . . .	<u>94</u>	Bernard of Clairvaux . . . . . 56
\@nameauth@Debug . . . . .	<u>580</u>	Bess, Good Queen . . . . .
\@nameauth@Error . . . . .	<u>175</u>	. . . . . <i>see</i> Elizabeth I
\@nameauth@EvalDot . . . . .	<u>170</u>	Boëthius . . . . . 16
\@nameauth@GetSuff . . . . .	<u>103</u>	BURNS, Robert . . . . . 64
\@nameauth@Hook . . . . .	<u>494</u>	
\@nameauth@Index . . . . .	<u>547</u>	<b>C</b>
\@nameauth@Name . . . . .	<u>188</u>	\CapName . . . . . 27, <u>660</u>
\@nameauth@NonWest . . . . .	<u>382</u>	\CapThis . . . . . 28, <u>657</u>
\@nameauth@Parse . . . . .	<u>263</u>	Carnap, Rudolph . . . . . 33, 52
\@nameauth@Root . . . . .	<u>96</u>	Carter, J.E., Jr., pres. . . . . 18, 40
\@nameauth@Suffix . . . . .	<u>100</u>	Carter, Jimmy . . . . .
\@nameauth@TestDot . . . . .	<u>156</u>	. . . . . <i>see</i> Carter, J.E., Jr.
\@nameauth@TestToks . . . . .	<u>105</u>	Chaplin, Charlie . . . . . 50, 51
\@nameauth@TrimTag . . . . .	<u>98</u>	Chiang Kai-shek†, pres. . . . . 11, 26
\@nameauth@UTFtest . . . . .	<u>113</u>	Cicero, M.T. . . . . 21, 22, 29, 34, 67
\@nameauth@UTFtestS . . . . .	<u>130</u>	Clemens, Samuel L. . . . .
\@nameauth@West . . . . .	<u>440</u>	. . . . . <i>see</i> Twain, Mark
\@nameauth@toksa . . . . .	<u>45, 58</u>	Colfax, Schuyler, v.p. . . . . 48
\@nameauth@toksb . . . . .	<u>45, 58</u>	Confucius . . . . . 21, 22, 26, 34
\@nameauth@toksc . . . . .	<u>45, 58</u>	cummings, e.e. . . . . 28
		<b>D</b>
<b>A</b>		Dagobert I†, king . . . . . 11, 67
\AccentCapThis . . . . .	<u>28, 658</u>	d’Andrea, Giovanni . . . . . 24
ADAMS, John, pres. . . . .	<u>61, 66</u>	DAVIS, Sammy, JR. . . . . 61, 66
Æthelred II, king . . . . .	<u>9, 15, 26, 44</u>	Demetrius I Soter, king . . . . .
\AKA . . . . .	<u>54, 1560</u>	. . . . . 12, 29, 57
\AKA* . . . . .	<u>54, 1627</u>	De Pamele, Jacques . . . . . 24
à Kempis, Thomas . . . . .		[de Smet], Pierre-Jean . . . . . 62, 66
. . . <i>see</i> Thomas à Kempis		de Soto, Hernando . . . . . 8, 9, 28
\AllCapsActive . . . . .	<u>27, 662</u>	<i>Doctor angelicus</i> . . . . .
\AllCapsInactive . . . . .	<u>27, 661</u>	. . . . . <i>see</i> Thomas, Aquinas
\AltCaps . . . . .	<u>37, 695</u>	<i>Doctor mellifluus</i> . . . . .
\AltFormatActive . . . . .	<u>35, 673</u>	. . . . . <i>see</i> Bernard of Clairvaux
\AltFormatActive* . . . . .	<u>35, 677</u>	Dongen, Marc van . . . . . 69, 81
\AltFormatInactive . . . . .	<u>35, 681</u>	Dracula . . . . . <i>see</i> Vlad III
\AltOff . . . . .	<u>37, 690</u>	\DropAffix . . . . . 25, <u>711</u>
\AltOn . . . . .	<u>37, 685</u>	DuBois, W.E.B. . . . .
Andreae, Ioannes . . . . .		. . . <i>see</i> Du Bois, W.E.B.
. . . <i>see</i> d’Andrea, Giovanni		Du Bois, W.E.B. . . . . 23, 44
		du Cange <i>see</i> du Fresne, Charles
		du Fresne, Charles . . . . . 55
		<b>E</b>
		Einstein, Albert . . . . . 21, 22, 34, 50
		Elizabeth I, queen . . . . .
		. . . . . 7, 8, 21, 22, 32, 34, 55
		environments:
		nameauth . . . . . 7, <u>1638</u>
		\ExcludeName . . . . . 41, <u>995</u>
		<b>F</b>
		\FName . . . . . 22, <u>818</u>
		\FName* . . . . . 22, <u>819</u>
		foo\$ . . . . . 39
		\ForceFN . . . . . 22, <u>666</u>
		\ForceName . . . . . 34, <u>718</u>
		\ForgetName . . . . . 50, <u>1442</u>
		\ForgetThis . . . . . 50, <u>716</u>
		\FrontNameHook . . . . . 33, <u>54</u>
		\FrontNamesFormat . . . . . 33, <u>53</u>
		FUKUYAMA Takeshi . . . . . 36
		<b>G</b>
		GARBO, Greta . . . . . 36, 43
		Ghazālī . . . . . 70
		\GlobalNames . . . . . 50, <u>720</u>
		Goethe, J.W. von . . . . . 8, 25
		Gossett, Louis, Jr. . . . . 25
		Grant, Ulysses S., pres. . . . . 48, 49
		Gregorio, Enrico . . . . . 69
		Gregory I, pope . . . . . 46, 55
		Gregory the Great . . . . .
		. . . . . <i>see</i> Gregory I
		<b>H</b>
		Hammerstein, Oskar, II . . . . . 25, 26
		Harnack, Adolf . . . . . 12, 68
		Harun AL-RASHID . . . . . 61, 66
		Hearn, Lafcadio . . . . . 55
		Henry VIII†, king . . . . . 11–13
		Hope, Bob . . . . . 52, 54
		Hope, Leslie Townes . . . . .
		. . . . . <i>see</i> Hope, Bob
		Humperdinck, E. (composer) . . . . . 46
		Humperdinck, E. (singer) . . . . . 46
		<b>I</b>
		\if@nameauth@InAKA . . . . . 58
		\if@nameauth@InName . . . . . 58
		\IfAKA . . . . . 52, <u>1407</u>
		\IfFrontName . . . . . 52, <u>1384</u>

\IfMainName	51, 1361	\Name*	21, 816	\ShowComma	25, 709	
\IncludeName	41, 1087	Name, Lost §	perdit(47)	\ShowIdxPageref	13, 729	
\IncludeName*	41, 1146	\NameAddInfo	48, 1290	\ShowIdxPageref*	13, 731	
\IndexActive	39, 724	nameauth (environment)	7, 1638	\ShowPattern	13, 728	
\IndexActual	44, 725	\NameauthFName	57, 67	\SkipIndex	39, 722	
\IndexInactive	39, 721	\NameauthLName	56, 67	Snel van Royen, R.	42	
\IndexName	39, 826	\NameauthName	55, 67	Snel van Royen, W.	42	
\IndexProtect	39, 821	\NameClearInfo	48, 1338	<i>Snellius</i>	<i>see</i> Snel van Royen, R.; Snel van Royen, W.	
\IndexRef	40, 888	\NameParser	63, 733	Stephani, Philipp	69	
Iron Mike	<i>see</i> Tyson, Mike	\NameQueryInfo	48, 1313	Strietelmeier, John	16	
Ishida Yoko†	27	\NamesActive	33, 715	\SubvertName	50, 1501	
<b>J</b>			\NamesFormat	33, 51	\SubvertThis	50, 717
Janos, James	<i>see</i> Ventura, Jesse	\NamesInactive	33, 714	Sullenberger, Chesley B., III	22	
JEFFERSON, Thomas, pres.	38	\NoComma	25, 710	Sun King	<i>see</i> Louis XIV	
Jesus Christ	53	Noguchi, Hideyo†	6, 9, 12, 26, 27	Sun Yat-sen, pres.	25, 26	
\JustIndex	40, 723	<b>O</b>				
<b>K</b>			Oberdiek, Heiko	46, 69, 78	<b>T</b>	
Kanno, Yoko†	27	<b>P</b>			\TagName	45, 1216
\KeepAffix	25, 712	Pamelius, Jacobus		\textBF	36, 707	
\KeepName	25, 713	<i>see</i> De Pamele, Jacques		\textIT	36, 705	
Kemal, Mustafa	59	Patton, George S., Jr.		\textSC	36, 701	
Keynes, John Maynard	34		5, 9, 12, 32	\textUC	36, 703	
King, Martin Luther, Jr.	14, 15	Paul	<i>see</i> Saul of Tarsus	Thomas à Kempis	28	
Koizumi Yakumo		\PName	55, 1628	Thomas Aquinas	44	
<i>see</i> Hearn, Lafcadio		\PName*	55, 1637	TOKUGAWA Ieyasu	36	
<b>L</b>			\PretagName	44, 1169	Twain, Mark	56
Lao-tzu	55, 56	<b>R</b>			Tyson, Mike	23
Leo I, pope	46	Rambam		<b>U</b>		
Leo the Great	<i>see</i> Leo I	<i>42, see also</i> Maimonides		\UntagName	45, 1267	
Lewis, Clive Staples	5, 9, 22	\RevComma	26, 667	<b>V</b>		
Li Er	<i>see</i> Lao-tzu	\ReverseActive	26, 665	Van Buren, Martin, pres.		
\LocalNames	50, 719	\ReverseCommaActive	26, 671		8, 26, 49	
Louis XIV, king	25, 40, 55	\ReverseCommaInactive	26, 669	Ventura, Jesse	52	
Lovelace, Ada	36	\ReverseInactive	26, 664	Vlad II Dracul	57	
Lueck, Uwe	69, 80	\RevName	26, 663	Vlad III Dracula	57	
Luecking, Dan	69	Rockefeller, Jay	<i>see</i> Rock-	Vlad Țepeș	<i>see</i> Vlad III	
Łukasiewicz, Jan	44	efeller, John David, IV		Voltaire	56	
LUTHER, Martin	38	ROCKEFELLER, John David,		<b>W</b>		
<b>M</b>			III	Washington, George, pres.		
Maimonides		Rockefeller, John David, IV	36		5, 8, 9, 40, 48, 49, 59, 67	
<i>see also</i> Rambam			5, 9, 63	White, E. B.	14, 16	
\MainNameHook	33, 52	RÜHMANN, Heinrich Wilhelm		William I	56	
Malebranche, Nicolas	33	<i>see</i> RÜHMANN, Heinz		William the Conqueror		
MEDICI, Catherine de'	38	RÜHMANN, Heinz	43	<i>see</i> William I		
MENCIUS	61, 66	<b>S</b>				
MENG Ke	<i>see</i> MENCIUS	Saul of Tarsus	53	<b>Y</b>		
Miyazaki Hayao	7, 9, 21, 22	Schlicht, Robert	69	Yamamoto Isoroku		
Molnár, Freneç†	6, 26	Scipio Africanus, Publius Cor-			7, 9, 12, 27, 32	
Moses ben-Maimon		nelius	4, 30, 31	Yohko	27	
<i>see</i> Maimonides		\SeeAlso	41, 727	Yoshida Shigeru†, PM	11	
<b>N</b>			Sergius Paulus, Lucius	53	<b>Z</b>	
\Name	21, 815	SHAKESPEARE, William	64	Ziegler, Caspar	24	